ŠKODA

ŠKODA Rapid Owner's Manual

Layout of this Owner's Manual (explanations)

This Owner's Manual has been systematically designed to make it easy for you to search for and obtain the information you require.

Chapters, table of contents and subject index
The text of the Owner's manual is divided into relatively short sections which are combined into easy-to-read **chapters**. The chapter you are reading at any particular moment is always specified on the bottom right of the page.

The **Table of contents** is arranged according to the chapters and the detailed **Subject index** at the end of the Owner's Manual helps you to rapidly find the information you are looking for.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement
All values are expressed in metric units.

Explanation of symbols

- Denotes a reference to a section with important information and safety advice in a chapter.
- ■ Denotes the end of a section.
- ▶ Denotes the continuation of a section on the next page.
- STOP Indicates situations where the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible.
- ® Denotes a registered trademark.
- M Indicates the texts displayed in the MAXI DOT screen.
- S Indicates the texts shown in the segment display.

Display
In this owner's manual, the screen on the MAXI DOT display is used as the display illustration, provided it is not otherwise stated.

Notes

WARNING

The most important notes are marked with the heading **WARNING**. These **WARNING** notes draw your attention to a **serious risk of accident or injury**.

CAUTION

A **Caution** note draws your attention to the possibility of damage to your vehicle (e.g. damage to gearbox), or points out general risks of an accident.

For the sake of the environment

An **Environmental** note draws your attention to environmental protection aspects. This is where you will, for example, find tips aimed at reducing your fuel consumption.

Note

A normal **Note** draws your attention to important information about the operation of your vehicle.

Documentation of vehicle delivery

Date of delivery/first registration[a] **(VIN)**

		/			/				

Vehicle identification number

ŠKODA Partner
Stamp and signature of the vendor

I confirm that I have taken delivery of the specified vehicle in good condition, have received information on how to operate it correctly, and have had the terms of the warranty explained to me.

Signature of the customer

[a] (whichever comes first).

ŠKODA extended warranty

Stamp of ŠKODA Partner

Limitations of the ŠKODA extended warranty[a]

Years: _____

or

km: _____

Valid from: _____

[a] (whichever comes first).

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.
You have received a vehicle with the latest technology and range of amenities. Please read this Owner's Manual carefully, because operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

If you have any questions about your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to only as ŠKODA or manufacturer) ▶

Terms used
The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

- "Specialist garage" - a company that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.
- "ŠKODA Service Partner" - A workshop that has been contractually authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to perform service tasks on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.
- "ŠKODA Partner" - A company that has been authorized by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Owner's Manual
These operating instructions apply to all **body variants** of the vehicle and to all related **models**.

This Owner's Manual describes all possible **equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment.

Consequently, your vehicle **does not need to contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The level of equipment in your vehicle refers to your purchase contract for the vehicle. More information is available from the ŠKODA Partner from whom you bought the vehicle.

The **illustrations** can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended for general information.

Table of Contents

Do-it-yourself

Technical data

Index

Materials defect liability and ŠKODA warranty for new cars

Materials defect liability
Your ŠKODA Partner, as a vendor, is liable to you for material damage to your new ŠKODA car, ŠKODA Genuine Parts or ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in accordance with statutory regulations and the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA warranty for new cars
As well as the materials defect liability, ŠKODA AUTO a.s. grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereinafter referred to as "ŠKODA warranty)," according to the conditions described below.

As part of the ŠKODA warranty, ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will guarantee the following services:
- Repair of damage to your vehicle that occurs within two years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty;
- Repair of paint damage to your vehicle that occurs within three years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty;
- Repair of rust perforation to the bodywork of your vehicle that occurs within twelve years from the start of the warranty. Only rust perforation of body sheets from the inside to the outside is included in the definition of rust perforation to bodywork and covered by the ŠKODA warranty.

The warranty starts on the date on which the original purchaser acquires the vehicle upon purchasing it from the ŠKODA Partner or the date of first registration. Whichever event occurs first and is recorded by the ŠKODA Partner in the service schedule accordingly is the one that applies.

Repairs may be carried out either by replacing the faulty part or by restoring it. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA Service Partner.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty. In particular, there shall be no claims for replacement, cancellation, provision of a courtesy vehicle for the duration of repairs or compensation for damages.

If your ŠKODA vehicle was purchased from a ŠKODA Partner in a country of the European Economic Area (i.e. the countries of the European Union, Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein) or in Switzerland, claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty must also be made through a ŠKODA Service Partner in one of these countries.

If your ŠKODA vehicle was purchased from a ŠKODA Partner outside the European Economic Area and Switzerland, claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty must also be made through a ŠKODA Service Partner outside the European Economic Area and Switzerland.

One of the conditions for service from the ŠKODA warranty is that all service work has been carried out in a timely and adequate manner and in accordance with the manufacturer's provisions. It must be proven that service work has been carried out properly and in accordance with the manufacturer's provisions when raising a claim from the ŠKODA warranty. In the event of a missed service or failure to carry out a service according to the manufacturer's provisions, you may still be entitled to warranty claims as long as you can prove that the missed service or the failure to carry out a service according to the manufacturer's provisions was not the cause of the fault.

Natural wear and tear to your vehicle is not covered by the ŠKODA warranty. The ŠKODA warranty also does not cover faults to bodywork, installations or conversions provided by third-parties, or vehicle faults caused as a result. The same applies to accessories that are not factory installed and/or delivered.

In addition, this warranty does not apply if the fault was caused by one of the following:
- Unauthorized use, improper handling (e.g. use in racing competitions or overloading), improper care and maintenance or unapproved modification to your vehicle;
- Non-compliance with provisions in the service schedule and the Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions;
- External causes or influences (e.g. accidents, hail, flooding etc.);
- Parts fitted on or in the vehicle, whose use has not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s., or modification of the vehicle in a manner not approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (e.g. tuning);
- Damage caused by you that was not immediately seen to by a specialist garage or was not rectified properly.

It is the customer's responsibility to prove that it was not the cause.

This ŠKODA warranty does not affect the purchaser's statutory rights from materials defect liability from the vehicle vendor and other potential claims from product liability laws.

Mobility warranty and ŠKODA extended warranty

Mobility warranty
The mobility warranty provides a sense of security when travelling in your vehicle.

As part of the mobility warranty, if your car breaks down when you are on the move as a result of an unexpected fault, you can access services to ensure your continued mobility. These services include the following: Breakdown service at the breakdown location and towing to the ŠKODA Service Partner, technical assistance by phone or on-site operation.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the ŠKODA Service Partner may provide further services as required, such as replacement transportation (bus, train etc.) or a courtesy vehicle etc.

More information regarding terms and conditions for the provision of a mobility warranty for your vehicle can be obtained from your ŠKODA Partner. They will also provide you with detailed terms and conditions for the mobility warranty with respect to your vehicle. In the event that there is no mobility warranty coverage available for your vehicle, you should check with any ŠKODA Service Partner about the possibility of a subsequent agreement.

Note

The mobility warranty is only available for some countries.

Optional ŠKODA extended warranty
If you received a ŠKODA extended warranty when purchasing your new car, the two-year ŠKODA warranty for damages to your ŠKODA vehicle will be extended to your chosen duration or until the specified mileage limit has been reached, whichever occurs first.

The previously mentioned paint warranty and the warranty against rust perforation are unaffected by the extended warranty.

Detailed conditions for the extended warranty are included in the extended warranty terms and conditions, which your ŠKODA Partner will have given to you upon purchasing your new car.

Note

The mobility warranty and optional ŠKODA extended warranty are only available for some countries.

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
AG	Automatic gearbox
TCS	Traction control
CO_2 in g/km	discharged quantity of carbon dioxide in grams per driven kilometer
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
EU	European Union
GSM	Groupe Spécial Mobile - a digital network of mobile devices for the transmission of voice and data
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HFP	Hands-free profile - connection of a mobile device by means of its Bluetooth® profile
HHC	Uphill start assist
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
MDI	Mobile Device Interface - connecting an external device via the AUX or USB input
MFD	Multifunction display
MG	Manual gearbox
MPI	Gasoline engine with a multi-point fuel injection
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
PIN	Personal Identification Number - personal identification number for the connection of electronic devices using Bluetooth®
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbocharging and common rail injection system
TSI	Petrol engine with turbocharging and direct injection

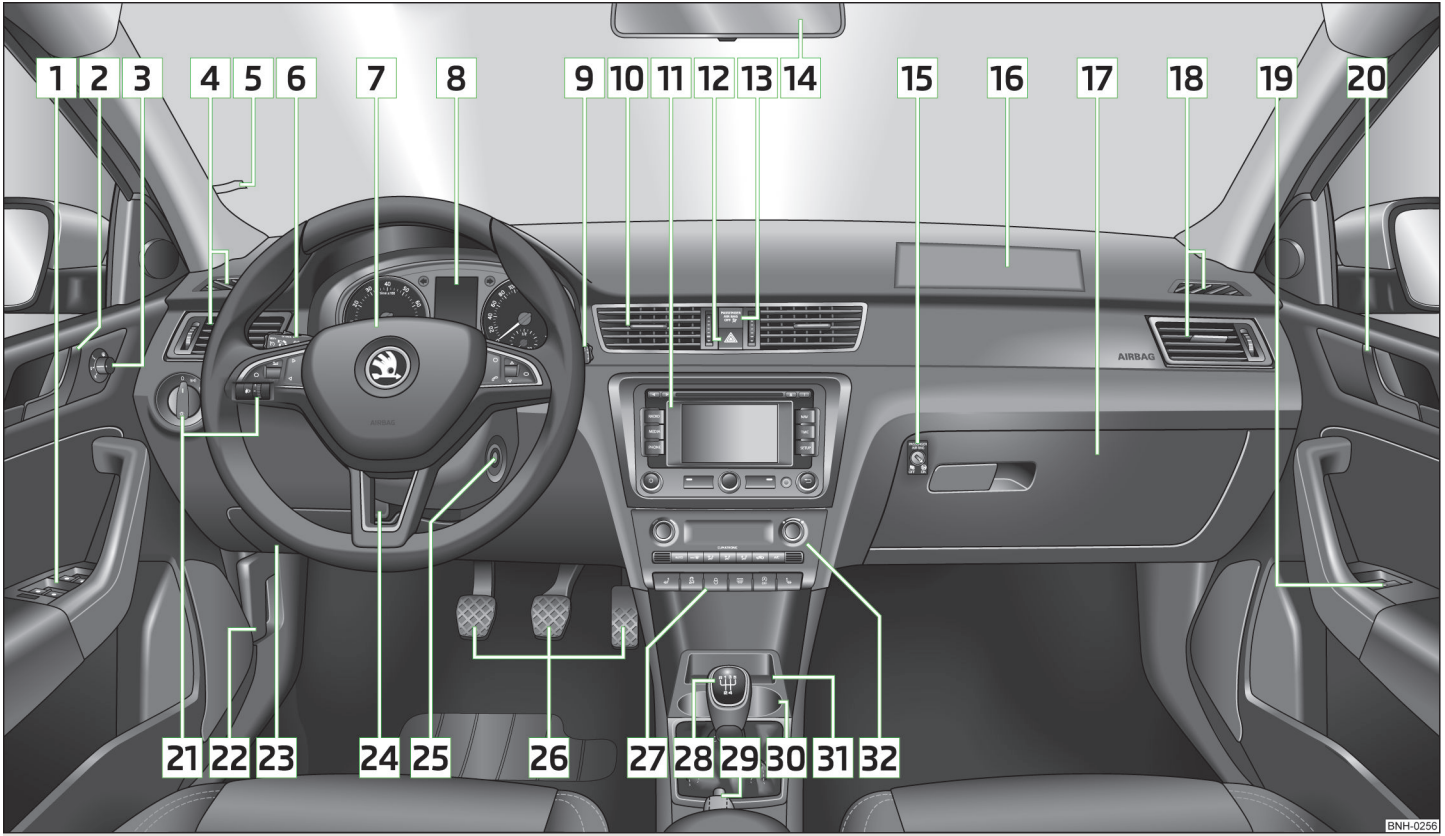

Fig. 1 **Cockpit**

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

Note

The position of some of the controls on right-hand drive models may differ from that shown in » Fig. 1. The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

Instruments and Indicator Lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

When the ignition is on, the instrument cluster is illuminated[1].

Fault display
If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the **Error** message will appear in the display. Have the fault rectified as soon as possible by a specialist garage.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.
- Never operate the controls in the instrument cluster while driving, only when the vehicle is stationary!

Overview

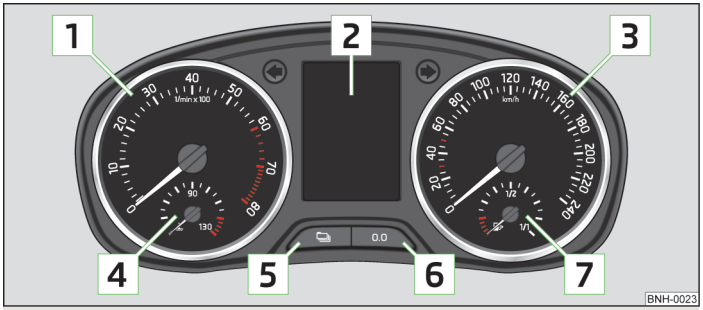

Fig. 2 **Instrument cluster**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 10.

1 Revolutions counter with warning lights » page 11
2 Display» page 11:
- With counter for distance driven » page 12
- With service interval display » page 28
- With digital clock » page 13
- with multifunction display (MFA) » page 25
- With information system » page 22

3 Speedometer with warning lights » page 11
4 Coolant temperature gauge[1]» page 11
5 Button for display mode:
- Setting the hours/minutes » page 13
- Enable/disable the display of the second speed[2] » page 13
- Service intervals - Display of the number of days and kilometres remaining until the next service[2] » page 28

[1] Applies to vehicles using the MAXI DOT display.
[2] Applies to vehicles with a segment display.

6 Button for:
- Reset daily trip counter » page 12
- Set hours/minutes
- enable / disable the mode selected by means of the 5 key

7 Fuel gauge[1] » page 12

Revolution counter

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 10.

The red scale of the revolution counter 1 » Fig. 2 on page 10 indicates the range in which the system begins to limit the engine speed. The system automatically restricts the engine speed to a steady limit.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

Follow the recommended gear to prevent engine speeds that are too high or too low » page 24.

Display

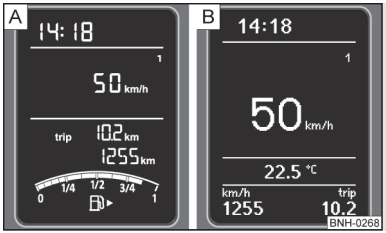

Fig. 3
Display types

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 10.

The instrument cluster can have one of the following types of display » Fig. 3.

A Segment display

B MAXI DOT display.

Speedometer

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 10.

Warning against excessive speeds

An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h[2]. The audible warning signal is switched off when the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

Coolant temperature gauge

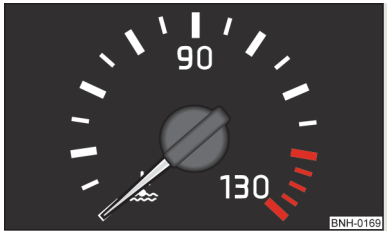

Fig. 4
Coolant temperature gauge

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 10.

The coolant temperature gauge » Fig. 4 only operates when the ignition is switched on.

In vehicles with a segment display, the coolant temperature is indicated only by the lighting up or going out of one of the warning lights » page 16, *Coolant*.

[1] Applies to vehicles using the MAXI DOT display.

[2] This function only applies to certain countries.

Cold range
If the pointer is still in the left area of the scale, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

The operating range
The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the mid-range of the scale. At very high ambient temperatures or heavy engine loads, the pointer may move even further to the right.

High temperature range
If the pointer reaches the red area of the scale, the coolant temperature is too high. Further information » page 16, *Coolant*.

CAUTION

Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.

Fuel gauge

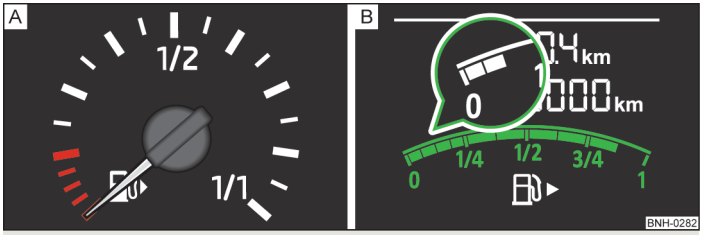

Fig. 5 **Fuel gauge**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 10.

The instrument cluster can have one of the following types of fuel gauge » Fig. 5.
A Instrument cluster with the MAXI DOT display
B Instrument cluster with the segment display

The fuel gauge only works if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 55 litres. The warning light lights up when the amount of fuel reaches the reserve zone » page 19.

The reserve zone is indicated by the red area of the scale » Fig. 5 - A or by displaying only the last two segments of the scale » Fig. 5 - B in the magnifying glass.

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

- After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates approx. a fraction less. When stopping or during less dynamic driving, the fuel gauge displays the correct fuel level again. This is not a fault.
- The arrow ▶ next to the icon within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Counter for distance driven

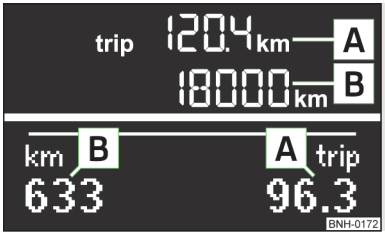

Fig. 6
Segment display / MAXI DOT display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 10.

Daily trip counter (trip)
The daily trip counter A » Fig. 6 indicates the distance driven since the counter was last reset - in intervals of 100 metres or 1/10 of a mile.

Reset daily trip counter
› Press and hold the 6 » Fig. 2 on page 10 button.

Odometer
The odometer B » Fig. 6 displays the total distance the vehicle has travelled.

Note

If the second speed display is enabled on vehicles with a segment display, this speed will be shown instead of the odometer.

Digital clock

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 10.

The clock is set using the buttons 5 and 6. » Fig. 2 on page 10

Select the display that you wish to change with the button 5 and carry out the change with the button 6.

In vehicles equipped with the MAXI DOT display, it is also possible to set the **clock** in the Time menu » page 28.

Display of the second speed

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 10.

The display can show the current speed in mph[1].

This feature is provided for driving in countries with different speed units.

MAXI DOT display.
The display of the second speed can be set in the menu item settings » page 28, *Settings*.

Segment display
› Press the 5 » Fig. 2 on page 10 key repeatedly until the odometer display flashes » page 12.
› Press the 6 key while the display flashes.

The second speed is displayed instead of the odometer.

The display of the second speed can be disabled in the same way.

[1] For models with the speedometer in mph, the second speed is displayed in km/h.

Auto Check Control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 10.

Vehicle condition
Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on.

Some error messages and other information are displayed in the MAXI DOT display. The messages are displayed simultaneously with the symbols in the MAXI DOT display or with the warning lights in the instrument cluster » page 14.

The menu item **Vehicle status** is shown in the main menu of the MAXI DOT display whenever at least one fault message exists. After selecting this menu, the first of the error messages is displayed. If there are several error messages, the display will show **1/3**, for example, below the message. This indicates that the first of a total of three error messages is being displayed.

Warning symbols in the MAXI DOT display

	Engine oil pressure too low	» page 16
	Check engine oil level, engine oil sensor defective	» page 16
	Problem with the engine oil pressure	» page 13
	Clutches of the automatic gearbox DSG are too hot	» page 13

Problem with the engine oil pressure
If the symbol is shown in the MAXI DOT display, you must have your vehicle checked immediately by a specialist garage. The information about the maximum permissible engine speed is displayed together with this symbol.

Clutches of the automatic gearbox DSG are too hot
A symbol in the MAXI DOT display indicates that the temperature of the automatic gearbox DSG clutches is too high.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Gearbox overheated. Stop! Log book!

do not continue to drive! Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and wait until the icon goes out – risk of gearbox damage! You can continue your journey as soon as the symbol disappears.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 44. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.

Note

- If the MAXI DOT display shows warning messages, these messages must be confirmed in order to access the main menu » page 22, *Using the information system* .
- As long as the operational faults are not rectified, the symbols are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Indicator lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The indicator lights show the current status of certain functions/faults and may be accompanied by audible signals.

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated indicator lights and related messages or instructions in the instrument cluster display may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 44. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning notes must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 162, *Engine compartment*.

Handbrake

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The warning light comes on if the handbrake is applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h for at least 3 seconds while the handbrake is applied.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Release parking brake!

Brake system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The indicator light illuminates if the brake fluid level in the braking system is too low or there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Brake fluid: Log book!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » page 170.

WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 44. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The following guidelines should be observed when opening the bonnet and checking the brake fluid level » page 162, *Engine compartment*.
- If the warning light is displayed simultaneously with warning light » page 18, *Antilock brake system (ABS)*, **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Seat belt warning light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The indicator light comes on after the ignition is switched on as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten the seat belt.

The indicator light goes out if the driver or front passenger has fastened their seat belt.

If the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt and the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h, the indicator light flashes and you will hear an acoustic signal.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next 90 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the indicator light lights up permanently.

Generator

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

If the warning light lights up when the engine is running, the vehicle battery is not being charged.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately. The electrical system requires checking.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 44. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.

CAUTION

If the indicator light (cooling system fault) lights up in addition to the indicator light while driving, **do not continue driving!** Stop the engine - there is a risk of engine damage!

Open door

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The warning light comes on if one or several doors are opened or if the boot lid is opened.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 44. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.

Engine Oil

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The warning light lights up red (low oil pressure)

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Oil pressure: Log book!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the engine oil » page 167.

Even if the oil level is correct, **do not drive any further** if the warning light is flashing. Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The warning light lights up yellow (oil quantity too low)

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Check oil level!

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the engine oil » page 167.

The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

The warning light flashes yellow (engine oil level sensor faulty)

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Oil sensor: Workshop!

If the engine oil level sensor is faulty, the warning light flashes several times and an audible signal sounds when the ignition is turned on.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 44. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.

Coolant

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The indicator light lights up until the engine reaches operating temperature[1]. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the warning light lights up or flashes, either the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK Log book!

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and check the coolant level » page 169.
- If the coolant level is too low, add coolant to the reservoir » page 170.
- If the indicator light disappears after adding coolant and switching on the ignition, you may continue your journey.
- If the coolant level is within the specified range, but the indicator light is still illuminated, check the fuse for the radiator fan and replace it if necessary » page 199, *Fuses in the engine compartment*.
- If the coolant level and fan fuse are both OK but the indicator light is still illuminated, **do not continue your journey!**
- Seek assistance from a specialist garage.

[1] Applies to vehicles with a segment display.

WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 44. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- Carefully open the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized – risk of scalding! It is therefore best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may switch itself on automatically even if the ignition is off.

Power steering

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

If the indicator light lights up, there is a fault in the power steering system.

The power steering operates with reduced steering assist or does not function at all.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The warning light flashes to show that the ESC is currently operating.

If the warning light comes on immediately after you start the engine, the ESC might be switched off due to technical reasons. Switch the ignition off and on again. If the indicator light does not light up after you switch the engine back on, the ESR is fully functional again.

If the warning light lights up there is a fault in the ESC system.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

or

Error: Traction control (ASR)

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Further information » page 111, *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*.

Note

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition. If the indicator light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Traction Control System (ASR)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The warning light flashes to show that the ASR is currently operating.

If the warning light comes on immediately after starting the engine, the ASR can be switched off for technical reasons. Switch the ignition off and on again. If the warning light does not light up after you switch the engine back on, the ASR is fully functional again.

If the warning light lights up, there is a fault in the ASR.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: Traction control (ASR)

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Further information » page 112, *Traction Control System (TCS)*.

Note

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and then reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition. If the indicator light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

If the warning light lights up, there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: ABS

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING

- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 44. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- If the warning light » page 15 is displayed together with warning light **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Rear fog light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The indicator light comes on when the rear fog light is switched on.

For further information, see » page 44.

Bulb failure

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The indicator light lights up if a bulb is faulty.

The indicator light lights up within a few seconds after switching on the ignition or when a light with a faulty bulb is switched on.

The following message, for example, may be shown in the MAXI DOT display.

INFORMATION Check front right low beam!

The rear side lights and the licence plate lighting have several light bulbs. The indicator light only lights up if all bulbs in the parking light (in one rear light) or the licence plate lighting are faulty[1]. For this reason, regular check that these light bulbs are working correctly.

Exhaust inspection system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

If the warning light lights up, there is a fault in the exhaust inspection system. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The indicator light lights up after the ignition has been switched on. Once the light has gone out, the engine can be started immediately.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light **does not** come on at all or **lights up continuously**.

If the warning light begins to **flash** while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

[1] Applies to vehicles with START-STOP system.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Engine performance check (petrol engine)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

If the warning light EPC lights up, there is a fault in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Diesel particle filter (diesel engine)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

If the indicator light lights up, soot has accumulated in the filter.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, drive as follows for at least 15 minutes or until the indicator light goes out.
› 4 or 5 Gear engaged (automatic transmission: position S).
› Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
› Engine speed between 1800-2500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning icon goes out.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light does not go out and the warning light begins to flash.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Diesel particulate filter: Log book!

The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode. After switching the ignition off and on again the indicator light, the indicator light also lights up.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING

- The diesel particle filter achieves very high temperatures. Therefore do not park in areas where the hot filter can come into direct contact with dry grass or other combustible materials – there is the risk of fire!
- Always adjust your speed to suit weather, road, region and traffic conditions. The recommendations indicated by the warning light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.

CAUTION

- As long as the warning light lights up, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with increased sulphur content can significantly reduce the service life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA Partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with increased sulphur content.

Note

- To assist the combustion process of the soot particles in the filter, we recommend that regularly driving short distances be avoided.
- If the engine is turned off during the filter cleaning process or shortly afterwards, the cooling fan may turn on automatically for a few minutes.

Fuel reserve

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The indicator light will come on if the fuel level is less than 7 litres.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Please refuel. Range: ... km

Note

The text in the display goes out only after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Airbag system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

If the warning light lights up, there is a fault in the airbag system.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: Airbag

The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, including when one of the airbags is switched off.

If a front, side or head airbag or belt tensioner has been switched off using the vehicle system tester:

› The indicator light lights up for around 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for around 12 seconds.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Airbag/belt tensioner deactivated.

If the air bag was switched off using the key-operated switch on the side of the dash panel on the passenger side:

› The indicator light comes on for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

› Switched off airbags are indicated by the indicator light OFF in the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF logo lighting up in the middle of the dash panel » Fig. 123 on page 140.

WARNING

If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.

Tyre inflation pressure

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The indicator light **lights up**, if there is a substantial drop in inflation pressure in one of the tyres. Check and adjust the pressure in all tyres » page 175.

If the indicator light **flashes**, there is a fault in the system.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Further information » page 178, *Tyre pressure monitor*.

Note

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and then reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition. If the indicator light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Windscreen washer fluid level

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

If the windscreen washer fluid level is too low, the warning light comes on.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Top up wash fluid!

Top up with liquid » page 165, *Windscreen washer system*.

Turn signal system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

Either the left or right indicator light flashes depending on the position of the operating lever.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the indicator light flashes at twice its normal rate.

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Further information » page 43, *Turn signal and main beam*.

Fog lights

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The indicator light lights up when the fog lights are switched on.

For further information, see » page 43.

Cruise control system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The indicator light lights up when the cruise control system is active.

For further information, see » page 114.

Selector lever lock

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

If the warning light lights up, operate the brake pedal. This is necessary, to be able to move the selector lever from position **P** or **N** » page 103.

Main beam

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 14.

The indicator light lights up when the main beam or headlamp flasher is switched on.

For further information, see » page 43.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The information system provides the driver with alerts and messages about individual vehicle systems. This information and advice is shown in the instrument cluster display or indicated by the illumination of the corresponding indicator light in the instrument cluster.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the information system provides the following advice and information.

- Ice warning » page 23.
- Recommended gear » page 24.
- Door, boot lid or bonnet warning » page 24.
- Compass display » page 24.
- Data relating to the multi-function display (MFD) » page 25.
- Warning against excessive speed » page 27.
- Data relating to the Maxi DOT display » page 27.
- Service interval display » page 28.
- Auto Check Control » page 13.
- Selector lever positions for an automatic gearbox » page 102.

WARNING

Concentrate fully on your driving at all times! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Using the information system

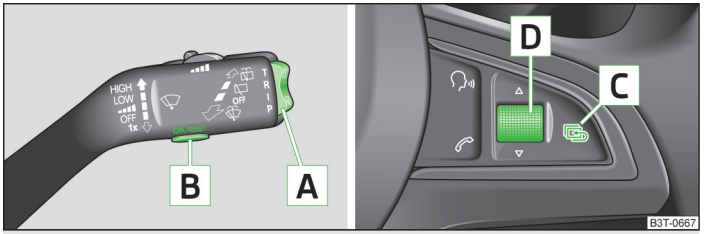

Fig. 7 **Buttons/adjustment wheel: on the operating lever/on the multifunction steering wheel**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 22.

Some functions of the information system can be operated using the buttons on the operating lever » Fig. 7 or on the multifunction steering wheel » Fig. 7.

Description of the operation

Button/adjustment wheel » Fig. 7	Operation	Action
A	Select data	Briefly push up or down
	Set data values	Briefly push up or down
	Open main menu in the MAXI DOT display	Press and hold button
B	Show data	Press briefly
	Confirm data	Press briefly
C	Open main menu in the MAXI DOT display	Press and hold button
	to go back one level in the menu of the MAXI DOT display	Press briefly
D	Select data	Turn upwards or downwards
	Set data values	Turn upwards or downwards
	Show data	Press briefly
	Confirm data	Press briefly

Ice warning

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 22.

Prompt in the MAXI DOT display
If the outside temperature while driving drops to below +4°C, the following icon appears on the display in front of the temperature display ❄. An audible signal is emitted.

If the outside temperature is already below +4°C when turning the ignition on, the ❄ icon appears immediately. An audible signal is emitted.

Prompt in the segment display[1)]
If the outside temperature while driving drops to below +4°C, the temperature display » page 26, *Outside temperature* will show up with the following icon in front ❄. An audible signal is emitted.

If the outside temperature is already below +4°C when turning the ignition on, the temperature display and the ❄ icon appear immediately. An audible signal is emitted.

After pressing button A » Fig. 7 on page 22, the most recently displayed data is shown.

! WARNING

Even at outside temperatures of around +4 °C, black ice may still be present on the road surface! You should therefore not rely solely on the outside temperature display for an indication of whether there is black ice on the road.

[1)] Applies to vehicles with the multifunction display (MFA).

Gear recommendation

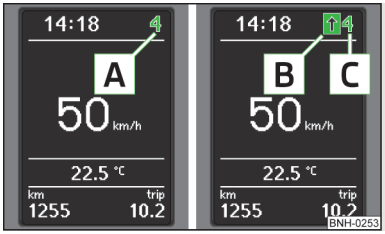

Fig. 8
Information on the selected gear / Gear recommendation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 22.

Information on the selected gear
The currently engaged gear A is shown in the display » Fig. 8.

Recommended gear
In order to minimise the fuel consumption, a recommendation for shifting into another gear is indicated in the display.

If the system recognises that it is beneficial to change gear, an arrow B [1] is displayed. The arrow points up or down, depending on whether you should shift into a higher or lower gear.

The gear recommendation is intended only for vehicles with a manual transmission or for vehicles with an automatic transmission in manual shift mode (Tiptronic).

For vehicles with manual transmission, the C display indicates the recommended gear.

! WARNING

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

For the sake of the environment

Correct shifting up has the following advantages.
- It helps to reduce fuel consumption.
- It reduces the operating noise.
- It protects the environment.
- It benefits the durability and reliability of the engine.

Door, boot or engine compartment warning

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 22.

Vehicles with a MAXI DOT display
If at least one door, the boot or bonnet is open, the display indicates the relevant **open** door, boot or bonnet vehicle icon.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h.

Vehicles with a segment display
If at least one door or the tailgate is open, the warning light in the instrument cluster lights up » page 15.

Compass point display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 22.

For vehicles with a factory fitted navigation system, an abbreviation for each point of the compass (depending on the current direction of travel) is shown on the top left-hand corner of the [2] display.

The compass point display only operates when the ignition is switched on.

[1] On vehicles with a segment display, the B arrow is displayed behind the C specification.
[2] Applies to vehicles using the MAXI DOT display.

Multifunction display (MFD)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The driving data is displayed on the multifunction display.

The multifunction display only operates when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

For vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, the menu item **MFA** must be selected and confirmed in the main menu » page 27, *MAXI DOT display*.

On vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, there is an option to fade out some of the information » page 28, *Settings*.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully on your driving at all times! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Even at outside temperatures of around +4 °C, black ice may still be present on the road surface! You should therefore not rely solely on the outside temperature display for an indication of whether there is black ice on the road.

Note

- In certain national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measures.
- If the display of the second speed is activated in mph, the current speed is not indicated in km/h on the display.
- The amount of fuel consumed will not be indicated.

Memory

Fig. 9
Multi-function display - Display example of the memory

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 25.

The multifunction display is equipped with two automatic memories, **1** and **2**. The selected memory is shown in the display » Fig. 9.

Single-trip memory (memory 1)
The single-trip memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off.

New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Total-trip memory (memory 2)
The total trip memory collates the data from any number of individual trips up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes or a 1999 km distance or, for vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, 99 hours and 59 minutes, or a 9999 km distance.

The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

Unlike the single-trip memory, the total-trip memory is not deleted after a period of interruption of driving of 2 hours.

Select memory
› Select the corresponding element of the multifunction display » page 22, *Using the information system*.

Confirm the element again to switch between the individual memories.

Reseting

› Select the corresponding element of the multifunction display » page 22, *Using the information system*.
› Select the desired memory.
› Press and hold button B or adjustment wheel D » Fig. 7 on page 22.

The following values of the selected memory are set to zero.

› Average fuel consumption.
› Distance driven.
› Average speed.
› Driving time

Note

Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

Information overview

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 25.

The amount of information displayed may differ depending on the equipment.

Outside temperature
The current outside temperature is displayed.

For vehicles with a MAXI DOT display this information is always shown.

Driving time
The time travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the time travelled from a particular moment in time, reset the memory to zero at that point in time » page 25, *Memory*.

The maximum time indicated in both memories is 19 hours and 59 minutes and on vehicles which are fitted with a MAXI DOT display, it is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Current fuel consumption
The current fuel consumption level is displayed in litres/100 km[1]. You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed[2].

Average fuel consumption
The average fuel consumption since the memory was last erased is displayed in litres/100 km[1].

If you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time, you must set the memory at the start of the new measurement to zero » page 25, *Memory*. After erasing the memory, no value is displayed until you have driven approx. 300 m.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Range
The range indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the level of fuel in the tank and with the same style of driving as before.

The display is shown in steps of 10 km. After lighting up of the indicator light the display is shown in steps of 5 km.

The fuel consumption over the last 50 km is used to calculate the information. The range will increase if you drive in a more economical manner.

If the memory is set to zero (after disconnecting the battery), a fuel consumption of 10 l./100 km is calculated for the range; afterwards the value is updated according to the style of driving.

Distance travelled
The distance travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the distance travelled from a particular moment in time, reset the memory to zero at that moment in time » page 25, *Memory*.

The maximum distance indicated in both memories is 1 999 km or 9 999 km on vehicles with a MAXI DOT display. The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Average speed
The average speed since the memory was last erased is displayed in km/hour .

To determine the average speed over a certain period of time, set the memory to zero at the start of the measurement » page 25, *Memory*.

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

[1] On some models in certain countries, the display appears in kilometres/litre.
[2] On some models in certain countries, – -.- km/ltr. is displayed when the vehicle is stationary.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Current driving speed
The current speed displayed is identical to the display on the speedometer 3 » Fig. 2 on page 10.

Oil temperature
If the engine oil temperature is in the range of 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature has been reached.

If the oil temperature is lower than 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature is present, the following **– – –** is displayed instead of the oil temperature.

Warning at excessive speeds
Set the speed limit, e.g. for the maximum permissible speed in towns » page 27, *Warning at excessive speeds*.

Warning at excessive speeds

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 25.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary
› Select the menu item **Speed warning** (MAXI DOT display) or (segment display).
› Activate the speed limit option by confirming this menu item[1].
› Set the desired speed limit, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Store the speed limit by confirming the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

The speed limit can be adjusted from 30 km/h to 250 km/h in 5 km/h increments.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving
› Select the menu item **Speed warning** (MAXI DOT display) or (segment display).
› Drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

If you wish to adjust the set speed limit, you can do so in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

› Store the speed limit, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Change or disable speed limit
› Select the menu item **Speed warning** (MAXI DOT display) or (segment display).
› By confirming the stored value, the speed limit is disabled.
› By reconfirming, the option to change the speed limit is activated.

If the set speed limit is exceeded, an audible signal will sound as a warning. The menu item **Speed warning** (MAXI DOT display) or (Segment display) appears in the display at the same time as the set threshold.

The set speed limit value remains stored even after switching off the ignition.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The MAXI DOT display provides you with information about the **current operating state of your vehicle.** Depending on the vehicle equipment, it also provides you with data relating to the radio, multifunction display (MFD), mobile phone, navigation system, automatic gearbox » page 101 and devices connected via the MDI input.

! WARNING

Concentrate fully on your driving at all times! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

[1] If no value is set the output value 30 km/h is automatically displayed.

Main menu

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 27.

Press and hold button A or C » Fig. 7 on page 22 to activate the **MAIN MENU**. By briefly pressing the C button you will reach one level higher.

Main menu items

The following information can be selected (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle).
- **MFD** (Multifunction display) » page 25
- **Audio** » *Operating instructions for the radio*
- **Navigation** » *Operating instructions for the navigation system*
- **Phone** » page 85;
- **Vehicle status** » page 13
- **Settings** » page 28

The **Audio** and **Navigation** menu items are only displayed when the factory-fitted radio or navigation system is switched on.

Note

- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must be verified to access the main menu » page 22, *Using the information system*.
- If the display is not activated at that moment, the menu always shifts to one of the higher levels after approx. 10 seconds.
- Using the factory-fitted radio or navigation system » *Radio operating instructions* or» *navigation system operating instructions*.

Settings

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 27.

You can change certain settings by means of the MAXI DOT display. The current menu item is shown in the top of the display under a line.

The following information can be selected (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle).

Language
You can set the language for the display texts here.

MFD data
Activate or deactivate certain displays of the multifunction display here.

Time
The time, time format (12 or 24 hour indicator) and the changeover between summer/winter time can be set here.

Winter tyres
Here, you can set the speed at which an audible signal should sound. This function is, for example, used for winter tyres where the maximum permissible speed is lower than the maximum speed of the vehicle » page 175, *Tyres and wheel rims*.

The following message appears in the display if the speed limit is exceeded.

Winter tyres: maximum ... km/h.

Units of measurement
The units for the temperature, consumption and distance driven can be set here.

Alt. speed dis.
Here, the display of the second speed in mph[1)] can be activated.

Service
Here you can have the remaining kilometres and days until the next service interval displayed, and reset the Service Interval Display.

Factory setting
Here, the factory settings of the display can be restored.

Service interval display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

[1)] For models with the speedometer in mph, the second speed is displayed in km/h.

Before the next service interval is reached, **a message concerning the kilometres and days remaining until the next service is due** is shown for about 10 seconds after the ignition is switched on. Alternatively, this information can be displayed manually at any time if required.

The kilometre indicator or the days indicator reduces in steps of 100 km or, where applicable, days until the service due date is reached.

Note

- Information is retained in the Service Interval Display even after the vehicle battery is disconnected.
- If the instrument cluster is exchanged after a repair, the correct values must be entered in the counter for the Service Interval Display. This work is carried out by a specialist garage.
- In certain national versions, the displays appear with Imperial values.
- For more information on the service intervals, see » page 147, *Service intervals*.

Prompt in the segment display

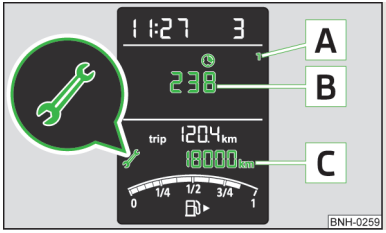

Fig. 10
Segment display: Example of a message

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 28.

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 10

- service interval due
- A Differentiating between types of service
- B Days remaining until the next service interval
- C Kilometres remaining until the next service interval[1)]

Differentiating between types of service

The service type is determined by the number in position A » Fig. 10.

1 Oil change service
2 Inspection

Service due

If a service becomes **due**, then the following information is displayed for about 10 seconds » Fig. 10 .

› The number **1** or **2** is displayed in position A.
› The symbol and the number of days remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position B.
› The symbol and the number of kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position C.

As soon as the due date for the service **has been reached**, the flashing icon and the message **OIL CHNG** or **INSPEC_** appear in the display for about 20 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

Display the days and distance until the next service interval

Press button 5 » Fig. 2 on page 10continuously at any time when the ignition is switched on to display the remaining distance and days until the next service interval.

Information on the **oil change service** is displayed at first, followed by information on the **inspection** when button 5 is pressed again.

› The number **1** or **2** is displayed in position A.
› The symbol and the number of days remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position B.
› The symbol and the number of kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position C.

Prompt in the MAXI DOT display

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 28.

Oil change service

If an oil change service is **due**, the following message appears: **Oil change in ... km or .... days.**

[1)] The kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed instead of the odometer.

As soon as the service interval date **has been reached**, the message **Oil change now!** appears once the ignition has been switched on.

Inspection
If an inspection is **due**, the following message appears: **Inspection in ... km or ... days.**

As soon as the service interval date **has been reached**, the message **Inspection now!** appears once the ignition has been switched on.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval
You can view the remaining distance and days until the next service appointment at any time when the ignition is switched on by going to the **Settings** menu item » page 28 or from the **vehicle status** in the main menu of the Maxi DOTdisplay. » page 28

The following message is displayed for 10 seconds.

Oil change ... km / ... days

Inspection ... km / ... days

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Your car is equipped with a central locking system.

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock **all** doors, the fuel filler flap[1] and tailgate at the same time.

The safe securing system » page 33 is integrated in the central locking system. Once the car is locked from the outside, the door locks are automatically blocked by the safe securing system » !.

The following is true after unlocking

› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap[1] are unlocked.
› The interior light, which is switched by the door contact, comes on.
› The safe securing system is switched off.
› The indicator light in the driver door stops flashing.
› The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated[2].

The following is true after locking

› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap[1] are locked.
› The interior lights connected over the door contact go off.
› The safe securing system is switched on.

[1] Applies to vehicles with a lockable fuel filler cap.
[2] Applies to vehicles with an anti-theft alarm system.

› The warning light in the driver door begins flashing.
› The anti-theft alarm system is activated[2].

Displaying an error

If the indicator light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then lights up for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

! WARNING

- If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!
- Locked doors prevent unwanted entry into the vehicle from outside, for example at road crossings.

i Note

- In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.
- Only the driver's door can be unlocked or locked using the key if the central locking system fails » page 32. The other doors and the tailgate can be emergency locked or emergency released.
  - Emergency locking of the door » page 194.
  - Emergency unlocking of the boot lid » page 194.

Vehicle key

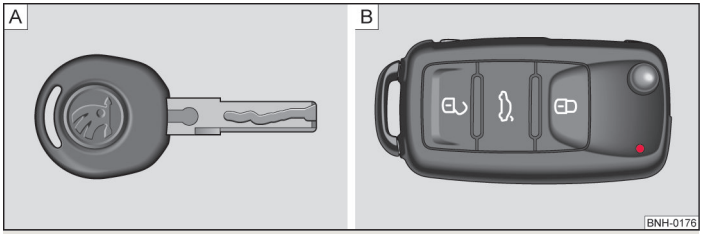

Fig. 11 **Key: without/with remote control**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 31.

Two keys are provided with the vehicle » Fig. 11.

A Keys without remote control
B Keys with remote control (remote control keys)

The transmitter with the battery is housed in the handle of the remote control key. The receiver is located in the interior of the vehicle.

The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

The remote control key has a fold-open key bit which can be used for unlocking and locking the car manually and also for starting the engine.

The spare key must by initialised by a specialist garage after repair or replacement of the receiver unit. Only then can the remote control key be used again.

WARNING

- Always withdraw the key whenever you leave the vehicle – even if it is only for a short time. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. Otherwise, children might start the engine or operate electrical equipment (e.g. power windows) – risk of injury!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop. The steering lock might otherwise engage unintentionally – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than approx. 3 metres away » page 193.

Note

If you lose a key, please contact a specialist garage, which will be able to provide you with a new one.

Unlocking/locking with the key

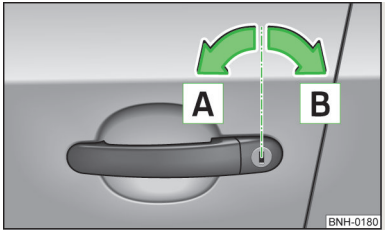

Fig. 12
Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 31.

Unlocking

› Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the direction of travel (unlocking position) A » Fig. 12.

Locking

› Turn the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the opposite direction of travel (locking position) B » Fig. 12.

If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Unlocking/locking with the remote control

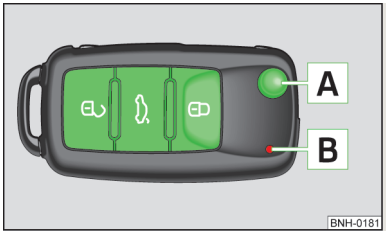

Fig. 13
Remote control key

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 31.

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 13

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle
- Unlocking the boot lid
- A Folding out/folding up of the key bit
- B Warning light

Unlocking
The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safelock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Locking
The turn signal lights flash once as confirmation that the vehicle has been locked.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

Checking the battery condition
If the red indicator light B » Fig. 13 does not flash when you press a button on the remote control key, the battery is empty. Replace the battery » page 193.

CAUTION

- Only operate the remote control when the doors and boot lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.
- If the driver door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked using the remote control key.
- Operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by signal interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).

Note

For vehicles with an anti-theft alarm system, the acoustic signals can also be activated/deactivated when locking/unlocking at a ŠKODA partner

Safe securing system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 31.

The door locks are blocked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. Afterwards, it is not possible to open the doors with the door handle either from the inside or from the outside.

This fact is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after switching off the ignition.

Check deadlock! Owner's manual!
CHECK SAFELOCK

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

Switching off
The safelock can be switched off by locking twice within 2 seconds.

Switching on
The safelock switches on automatically the next time the vehicle is locked and unlocked.

Switch-on display
The warning light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

Switch-off display
The indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

WARNING

If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Note

This function only applies to certain countries.

Individual settings

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 31.

Opening a single door
This function makes it possible to only unlock the driver's door. The other doors remain locked and are only unlocked when the command is repeated.

Automatic locking/unlocking
All doors are locked from a speed of around 15 km/h. The button in the handle of the boot lid is deactivated.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. In addition, it is possible for the driver or front passenger to unlock the car by pressing the central locking button.

The vehicle doors can be unlocked and opened at any time by pulling once on the door opening lever.

Note

Individual settings can be carried out in a specialist workshop.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle from the inside

Fig. 14
Central locking button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 31.

If the vehicle was not locked from the outside, you can also unlock or lock it with the button » Fig. 14 , even without the ignition being switched on. While a door is opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Locking
› Press » Fig. 14 the button

The symbol in the button lights up.

Unlocking
› Press » Fig. 14 the button

The symbol in the button goes out.

The following applies if your vehicle has been locked using the central locking button.
› It is not possible to open the doors or the boot lid from the outside (safety feature, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights etc.).
› The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.
› In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked from the inside in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

WARNING

- Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!
- Never leave children in the vehicle unattended.

Note

If the safelock system is switched on » page 33, the door opening lever and the central locking buttons do not work.

Child safety lock

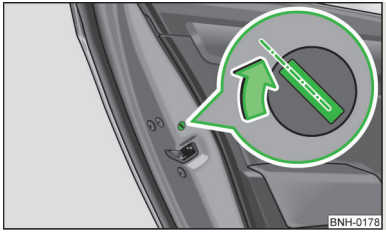

Fig. 15
Parental Control: Left rear door

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 31.

The child safety lock prevents the corresponding rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Switching on

› Turn the slot of the safety lock in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 15 (mirror-inverted on the right-hand door).

Switching off

› Turn the slot of the safety lock in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 15 (mirror-inverted on the right-hand door).

Opening/closing a door

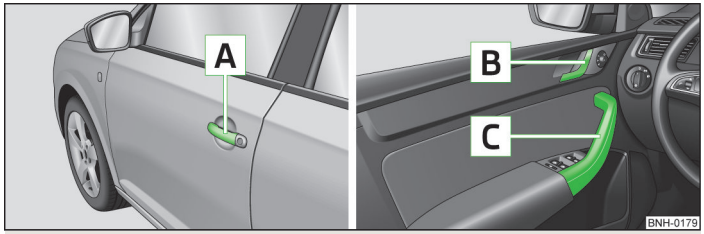

Fig. 16 **Door handle/door opening lever**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 31.

Opening from the outside

› Unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle A » Fig. 16 on the door you wish to open.

Opening from the inside

› Pull on door opening lever B of the respective door and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

› Grasp pull handle C and close the door.

WARNING

- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while driving – risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against vehicle break-ins. If an attempt is made to break into the vehicle, the system triggers audible and visual warning signals (hereafter referred to only as alarm).

An alarm is triggered when the following monitored areas of the vehicle have a fault.
› Bonnet.
› Boot lid.
› Doors.
› Ignition lock.
› Vehicle inclination » page 36.
› Interior of car » page 36.
› A drop in voltage of the on-board power supply.
› Socket of the factory-fitted towing device » page 124, *Driving with a trailer*.

An alarm is immediately triggered if either of the two battery terminals is disconnected while the alarm system is activated.

The alarm is **switched off** by unlocking the vehicle or switching on the ignition.

CAUTION

Before leaving the vehicle, check that the doors and windows are closed in order to ensure that the anti-theft alarm system is fully operational.

Note

The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years.

Activating/deactivating

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 36.

Activating
The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

If the vehicle is unlocked and a door or the boot lid not opened within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safe securing system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched back on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Deactivating
The alarm system is deactivated automatically after the vehicle is unlocked. If the vehicle is not opened within 30 seconds, the alarm system is automatically activated again.

Note

If the vehicle is unlocked by inserting the key into the driver door, the key must be inserted into the ignition lock and the ignition switched on within 15 seconds of unlocking the door to deactivate the alarm system.

Interior monitor and towing protection

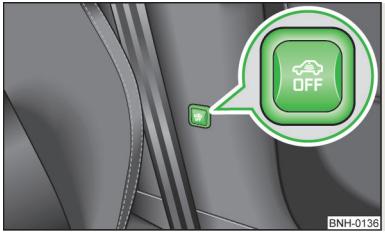

Fig. 17
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 36.

The interior monitor detects movements inside the car or the inclination of the vehicle, and then triggers the alarm.

Switching off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the driver door.
› Press the symbol button » Fig. 17 on the B-column on the driver's side. The symbol lighting in the button changes from red to orange.
› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

The interior monitor and the towing protection are activated automatically after the vehicle is locked.

Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movement (e.g. children or animals) from within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

CAUTION

- The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked, even if the safe securing system is deactivated. The interior monitor is however not activated.

Luggage compartment lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the boot lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if it was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the boot lid open or unlatched, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the luggage compartment lid, as otherwise it could crack – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- If the vehicle was locked before the boot lid was closed, the lid is immediately locked automatically when closed.
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the tailgate, it could crack.

Note

The function of the button in the grip above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function is restored after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.

Opening/closing

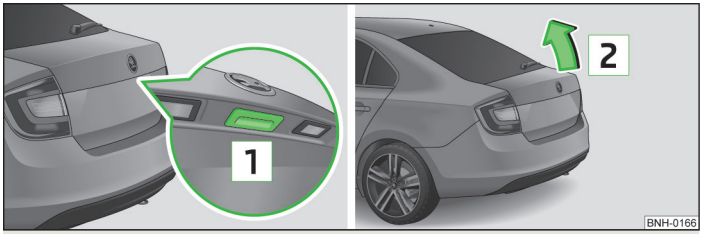

Fig. 18 **Boot lid handle/opening the boot lid**

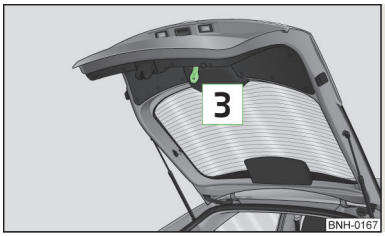

Fig. 19
Handle in the inner panelling of the boot lid

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 37.

After unlocking, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Opening

› Press the button in handle 1 » Fig. 18 and lift the flap in the direction of the arrow 2.

Closing

› Pull the lid down with handle 3 » Fig. 19 and close with a slight swing.

Automatic locking

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 37.

If the vehicle was locked before the boot lid was closed, the lid is immediately locked automatically when closed.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

Delayed locking

If the boot lid was locked using the symbol button on the remote control key, it is possible to open the boot lid within a limited period of time after it has been closed.

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. Therefore, the vehicle must always be locked using the symbol button on the remote control.

Delayed locking can be deactivated by a specialist garage at any time.

Note

More detailed information about this is available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Electrical power windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The electrical power windows can only be operated when the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- Ensure that no persons are still left in the vehicle when locking it. In an emergency, it will no longer be possible to open the windows from the inside.
- It is recommended to deactivate the electrically operated power windows in the rear doors (safety switch) S if there are children in the rear seats» Fig. 20 on page 39.
- The electrical power windows are fitted with a force limiter » page 40. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. However, the windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all eliminate the ice » page 155, *Windows and exterior mirrors* and only then operate the electrical power windows. Otherwise, the window sealing and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- Make sure that the windows are closed whenever you leave the locked vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

Note

When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

Opening/closing the windows

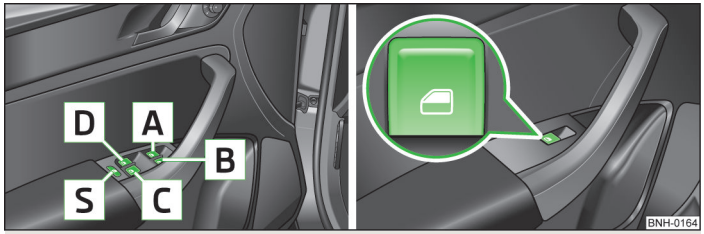

Fig. 20 **Buttons on the driver's door/in the rear doors**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

Buttons for the electrical power windows » Fig. 20.

A Button for electrical power window of the driver's door
B Button for electrical power window of the front passenger door
C Button for power window at the rear right door
D Button for power window at the rear left door
S Safety pushbutton

Opening

› The window can be opened by pressing lightly on the corresponding button. The opening process stops when one releases the button.

Additionally, the driver's window can be opened automatically (fully open) by pressing the button to the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Closing

› The window can be closed by pulling lightly on the top corner of the corresponding button. The closing process stops when one releases the button.

Safety pushbutton

The buttons for power windows in the rear doors can be deactivated by pressing the safety switch S » Fig. 20. The buttons for the electrical power windows at the rear doors are activated again by pressing the safety push-button S again.

If the buttons for the rear doors are deactivated, the warning light in the safety switch S lights up.

Note

The window lift mechanism is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

Force limit

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 38.

The electrical power windows are fitted with a force limiter. It reduces the risk of bruises or injuries when closing the windows.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window opens by a few centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window opens by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unless otherwise stated, the lights only work when the ignition is switched on.

On models fitted with **right-hand steering**, the position of some of the controls differs from that shown in » Fig. 21 on page 41. The symbols which mark the positions of the controls are identical.

WARNING

- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The driver is always responsible for the correct settings and use of the lights.
- Never drive with only the side lights on! The side lights are not bright enough to light up the road sufficiently in front of you or to be seen by other oncoming traffic. Therefore always switch on the low beam when it is dark or if visibility is poor.

Note

The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up in the peripheral areas. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.

Parking light and low beam

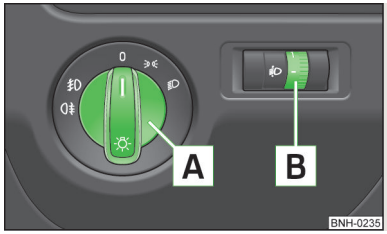

Fig. 21
Light switch and control dial for headlight range adjustment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Light switch positions A » Fig. 21.

- 0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)
- Switching on the parking light or parking lights on both sides[1] » page 45, *Parking light*
- Switching on the low beam[1]
- Switch on the front fog lamp » page 43
- Switching on the rear fog light» page 44

Headlight beam control
Turning the rotary switch B » Fig. 21 from position –– to gradually activates the headlight beam control , thereby shortening the beam of light.

[1] On vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, the symbol also lights up in the light switch.

The positions of the width of illumination correspond approximately to the following car load.

–– Front seats occupied, boot empty
1 All seats occupied, boot empty
2 All seats occupied, boot loaded
3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to meet the following conditions.
- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

- We recommend you adjust the headlight beam when the low beam is switched on.
- An audible warning signal will sound if the light switch is in the or position, the ignition key is removed and the driver's door is opened. The audible warning signal is switched off after a few seconds or as a result of door contact when the driver's door is closed. However, the side lights remain on to illuminate the parked vehicle if necessary.
- **If leaving the vehicle without needing the parking lights on, always turn the light switch to position 0.**

Daytime running lights(DAY LIGHT)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

The daytime running lights function provides the lighting of the front of the vehicle.

Switching on daytime running lights
› Turn the light switch » Fig. 21 on page 41 to position 0.

Deactivating the daylight driving lights function
› Deactivate the daylight driving lights by removing the fuse for the daylight driving lights » page 197, *Fuses in the dash panel*.

Activating the daylight driving lights function
› Activate the daylight driving lights by inserting the fuse with the appropriate amperage for the daylight driving lights » page 197, *Fuses in the dash panel*.

Deactivating daytime running lights on vehicles with the START-STOP system
› Switch off the ignition.
› Pull the turn signal lever » Fig. 22 on page 43 towards the steering wheel while simultaneously pushing it downwards, and hold it in this position.
› Switch on the ignition – wait until the left-turn signal light flashes 4x.
› Switch off the ignition – an audible signal sounds which confirms the deactivation of the daytime running lights.
› Release the turn signal lever.

Activating daytime running lights on vehicles with the START-STOP system
› Switch off the ignition.
› Pull the turn signal lever » Fig. 22 on page 43 towards the steering wheel while simultaneously pushing it upwards, and hold it in this position.
› Switch on the ignition – wait until the right-turn signal light flashes 4x.
› Switch off the ignition – an audible signal sounds which confirms the activation of the daytime running lights.
› Release the turn signal lever.

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The daylight driving lights function is activated.
✓ The light switch » Fig. 21 on page 41 is in position 0.

Note

When the daytime running light is switched on, the side lights (neither at the front nor the rear) and the number plate lights are not lit.

Turn signal and main beam

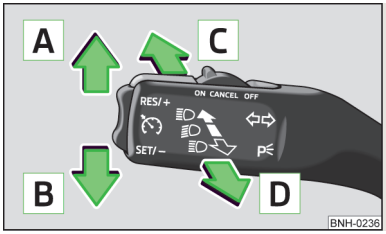

Fig. 22
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Lever positions » Fig. 22

A Switch on right turn signal ⇨
B Switch on left turn signal ⇦
C Switch on main beam (spring-tensioned position) ≡D
D Switch on main beam or headlamp flasher (spring-loaded position) ≡D

The parking light can also be controlled with the control lever » page 45.

The **main beam** can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

When the high beam or headlight flasher is on, the warning light ≡D lights up in the instrument cluster.

When the left or right turn signal is on, the warning light ⇦ or ⇨ flashes in the instrument cluster.

"Convenience turn signal"
If you only wish to flash three times, briefly push **the lever** to the upper or lower pressure point and **release again**.

Turn signal for changing lanes - to only flash briefly, only move **the lever** up or down to the pressure point and **hold it in this position**.

! WARNING

Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

i Note

- The headlight flasher can be operated even if the ignition is switched off.
- The turn signal light switches itself off automatically when driving around a curve or after making a turn.
- The warning light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb for the turn signal light fails.

Fog lights

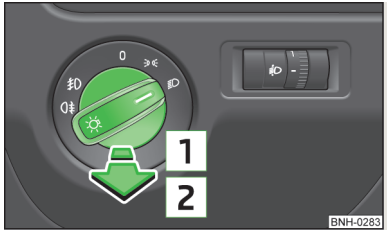

Fig. 23
Light switch

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Switching on/off
› Turn the light switch to position ≡D or ≡D » Fig. 23 .
› Pull the light switch to position 1.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

The warning light ≡D lights up in the instrument cluster when the fog lights are switched on » page 14.

Fog lights with CORNER function

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

The CORNER function lights the front fog lamp on each side of the vehicle to illuminate the area around the vehicle when turning, parking, etc.

The CORNER **function is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.**

- ✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply to the right or left[1].
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The vehicle is stopped or moves at a speed of no more than 40 km/h.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The daytime running lights are not switched on.
- ✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

The CORNER light is mainly intended to be used for illuminating the nearby environment at a broad angle in front of and beside the vehicle. It lights up and goes out gradually.

Note

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

Rear fog light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Switching on/off

› Turn the light switch to position or » Fig. 23 on page 43 .
› Pull the light switch to position 2.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

If the vehicle is not fitted with fog lights » page 43, the rear fog light is switched on by turning the light switch to the position and is pulled out directly to the position 2. This switch can only be put into one position.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on » page 14.

Only the rear fog light on the trailer lights up if the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing device or a towing device from ŠKODA original accessories and it is driven with a trailer.

[1] If both switch-on conditions are conflicting, for example, if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

Hazard warning light system

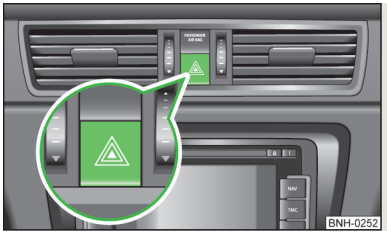

Fig. 24
Button for hazard warning light system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Switching on/off

› Press the button ⚠ » Fig. 24.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The warning light for the turn signals and the warning light in the button also flash at the same time. The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

If the turn signal light is switched on when the hazard warning light and the ignition are both switched on, then only the turn signal light on the corresponding vehicle side will flash.

WARNING

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example, the following occurs.
- You encounter a traffic congestion.
- The vehicle has broken down.

Parking light

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 41.

Parking light P switching on

› Switch off the ignition.
› Place the control lever into position A or B as far as it can go » Fig. 22 on page 43 - the parking light on the right/left-hand side of the vehicle is switched on.

Switching on the side light on both sides

› Turn the light switch A to position » Fig. 21 on page 41 and lock the vehicle.

Note

- The parking light P can only be activated if the ignition is switched off.
- If the right or left turn signal light has been switched on and the ignition is switched off, the parking light is not automatically switched on.
- On vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, the symbol in the light switch also lights up when the two-sided parking light is switched on.

Interior lighting

Front interior lighting – version 1

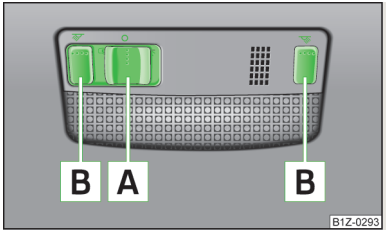

Fig. 25
Front interior lighting – version 1

Slide switch positions A » Fig. 25.

switching on
0 switching off (middle position)
control with the door contact switch

Switch for reading light B » Fig. 25

Switch the reading light on/off

If light operation with the door contact switch is enabled, **the light will come on** when one of the following events occurs:
› The vehicle is unlocked.
› One of the doors is opened.
› The ignition key is removed.

If light operation with the door contact switch is enabled, **the light will go off** when one of the following events occurs:
› The vehicle is locked.
› The ignition is switched on.
› About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Note

If the interior light remains switched on when the ignition is switched off or if one of the doors is open, the light will automatically go out after around 10 minutes.

Interior lighting – version 2

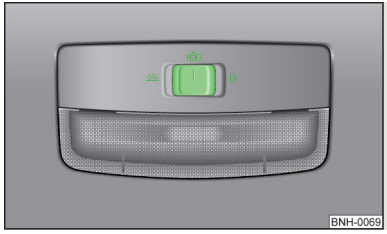

Fig. 26
Interior lighting – version 2

Slide switch positions » Fig. 26.

switching on
0 switching off
control using the door contact switch (middle position)

The same principles apply for interior lighting version 2 as for » page 45, *Front interior lighting – version 1*.

Rear interior light

Applies to vehicles without the panoramic roof.

Fig. 27
Rear interior lighting

The rear interior lighting is operated together with the front interior lighting [1].
- When the front interior lighting is **switched on**, the rear interior lighting also turns on automatically.
- When the front interior lighting is **switched off**, the rear interior lighting can be turned on/off as required.

Switching on/off
- Press the » Fig. 27 button.

Rear interior light

Applies to vehicles with a panorama roof.

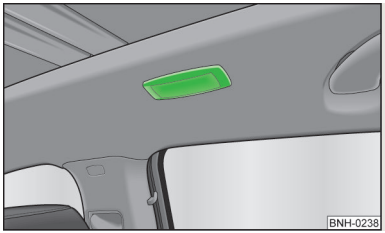

Fig. 28
Rear interior lighting

The light can be operated by moving the lens into one of the following positions » Fig. 28.
- switching on
- switching off
- Operation using the door contact switch (middle position)[2]

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

[1] This function only applies to certain countries. In some countries, the light at the rear is controlled independently from the light at the front.
[2] In this position, the same rules apply to this light as for the front interior light » page 45, *Front interior lighting – version 1*.

Rear window heater

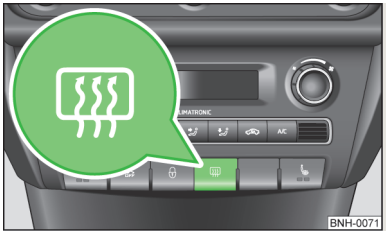

Fig. 29
Dash panel: Button for rear window heater

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 46.

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 29

Switch the rear window heater on/off

When the heater is switched on, a lamp lights up inside the button.

The rear window heater only operates when the engine is running.

The rear window heater **switches off** automatically after approx. 7 minutes.

For the sake of the environment

The heating should be switched off as soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy » page 108, *Saving electrical energy*.

Note

- If the on-board voltage drops, the rear window heater switches off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 174, *Automatic load deactivation*.
- If the light is flashing inside the button the heater is off due to low battery.

Sun visors

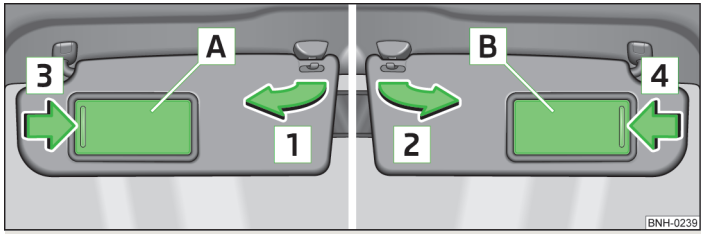

Fig. 30 **Sun visor: left/right**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 46.

The sun visor for the driver or front passenger can be pulled out of the fixture and swivelled towards the door in the direction of the arrow 1 or 2 » Fig. 30.

The driver or front passenger sun visor has a vanity mirror A or B with a cover. Slide the cover in the direction of arrow 3 or 4.

WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.

sunshade (Rapid Spaceback)

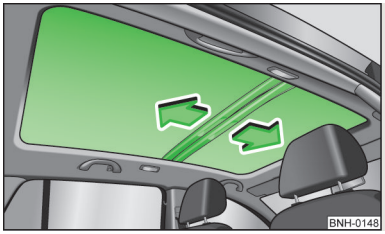

Fig. 31
Sun screen

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 46.

The interior can be lit through the panoramic roof tinted glass (hereinafter only referred to as sun roof). The panorama roof can be exposed or covered over with the sun screen » Fig. 31. In order to close the panorama roof completely, the sun screen must be pushed into its end position.

Please pay attention to the following points if you wish to transport luggage or other items on the roof of your vehicle » page 74, ! in section *Introduction*.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The windshield wipers and the windshield washer system only operate if the ignition is switched on.

The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Top up with windscreen wiper fluid » page 165.

WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 195.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window cleaner could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.
- Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

CAUTION

- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before the journey or before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are switched on, the windscreen wipers will continue wiping in the same mode after the ignition is turned back on. The windscreen wipers could freeze up in cold temperatures between the time the ignition was turned off and when it was turned back on again.
- Carefully detach frozen wiper blades from the front or rear window.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.
- Do not switch on the ignition if the front wiper arms are retracted. The wiper blades would move back into their rest position and while doing so damage the paintwork of the bonnet.

Note

- Keep the wiper blades clean. They may become soiled, e.g., with wax residues after washing in automatic car wash systems » page 153.
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.

Activating the windscreen wipers and washers

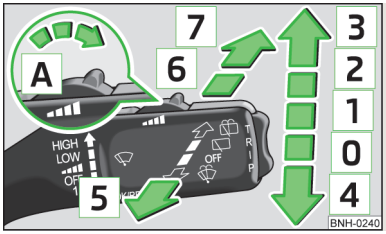

Fig. 32
Operating lever: Windscreen wipers and washer settings

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 48.

Operating lever positions » Fig. 32

- 0 Wipers off
- 1 Interval windscreen wiping
- 2 slow windscreen wiping
- 3 rapid windscreen wiping
- 4 Flick windscreen wiping, service position of the wiper arms » page 195, (spring-loaded position)
- 5 Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen (spring-tensioned position)
- 6 Wiping the rear window pane (the windscreen wiper wipes at regular intervals after a few seconds)
- 7 Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (spring-tensioned position)
- A Switch for setting the desired interval between the individual windscreen wipes (1 Interval windscreen wiping)

Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen
The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wipers wipe somewhat later.

Letting go of the operating lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wipers to continue for another 1-3 wiper strokes (depending on the spraying duration).

Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window
The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wiper wipes somewhat later.

Letting go of the operating lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 1-3 wiper strokes (depending on the spraying duration). **The operating lever remains in position 6.**

Headlight cleaning system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 48.

After the ignition is switched on, the headlights are always cleaned at the first and after every tenth spray of the windscreen 5 » Fig. 32 on page 49 when the low beam or main beam is switched on.

You should remove stubborn dirt (such as insect residues) from the headlight lenses at regular intervals, for example when refuelling. The following guidelines must be observed » page 156, *Headlight lenses*.

To ensure the proper operation of the cleaning system during the winter, any snow should be removed from the washer nozzle fixtures and ice should be cleared with a de-icing spray.

! CAUTION

Never remove the nozzles from the headlight cleaning system by hand – risk of damage!

Rear mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Make sure that the mirror is not covered by ice, snow, mist or other objects.
- Convex (curved outward) or aspheric exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.

Note

- The exterior mirror heater only operates when the engine is running.
- Do not touch the surface of the exterior mirrors if the exterior mirror heater is switched on.
- If the electrical exterior mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.
- Contact a specialist garage if there is a fault with the power setting function for the exterior mirrors.

Interior mirror

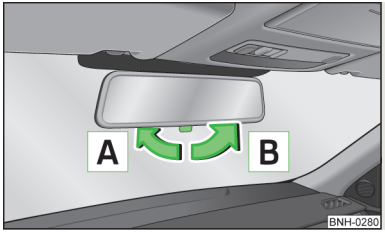

Fig. 33
Interior mirror

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 49.

Dimming mirror

› Adjust the lever at the lower edge of the mirror in the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 33.

The mirror dips.

Basic setting

› Adjust the lever at the lower edge of the mirror in the direction of the arrow B » Fig. 33.

Exterior mirror

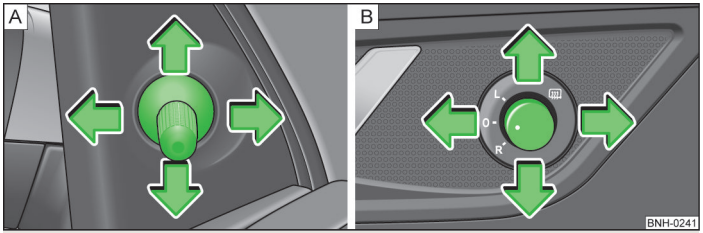

Fig. 34 **Front door - rotary knob for the exterior mirrors: mechanical/electrical**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 49.

The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

Mechanically-adjustable mirrors

By moving the rotary knob in the direction of the arrow, the mirror surface can be adjusted to the desired position » Fig. 34 - A.

Electrically-adjustable mirrors

By moving the rotary knob in the direction of the arrow, the mirror surface can be adjusted to the desired position » Fig. 34 - B.

The knob can be moved into the following positions.

L Adjust the left mirror
R Adjust the right mirror
0 Switch off mirror control
Mirror heater

Folding in the exterior mirrors

The whole exterior mirror can be manually folded towards the side windows. To put it back into its original position, it should be folded back from the side window until it audibly clicks into place.

Seats and useful equipment

Adjusting the seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important for the following:
› Reaching the controls safely and quickly,
› A relaxed and fatigue-free body position.
› **Achieving the maximum protection offered by the seat belts and the airbag system.**

WARNING

General information
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!
- Never carry more people than the number of seats in the vehicle.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 142, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
- The front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Do not carry any objects on the front passenger seat, except objects designed for this purpose (e.g. child seats) – risk of accident!

WARNING

Information for the driver
- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell, as these may get caught in the pedal apparatus when driving or braking » page 101. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or accelerate.

WARNING

Information for the front passenger
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – risk to life!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the dash panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury when braking or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

Note

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Adjusting the front seats

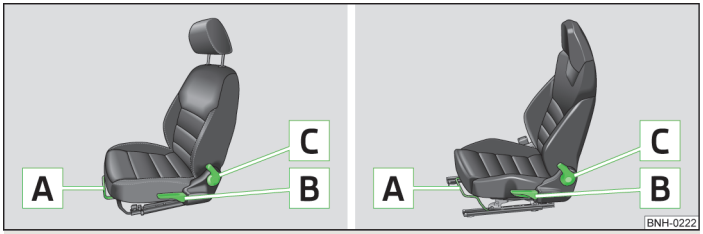

Fig. 35 **Controls on the seat / controls on the sport seat**

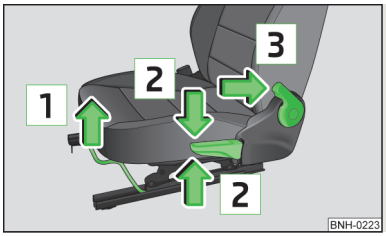

Fig. 36
Adjusting the seat

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 52.

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

› Pull lever A » Fig. 35 (in the centre) in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 36 and push the seat in the required direction.

The lock must click into place after you release the lever.

Adjusting height of seat

› Push or pull lever B » Fig. 35 in the direction of one of the arrows 2 » Fig. 36 again.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

› Remove the load on the seat backrest (do not lean on it), pull the lever C » Fig. 35 in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 36 and set the desired angle of the seat backrest with the back.

After releasing the lever C, the seat backrest will remain in the set position.

Head restraints

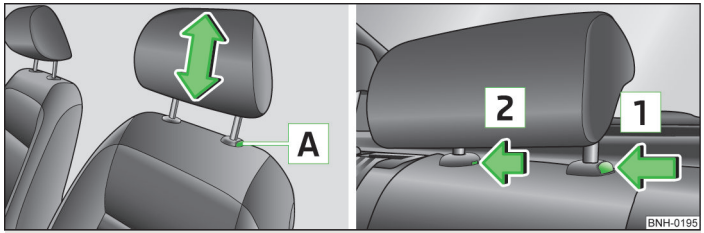

Fig. 37 **Head restraint: adjusting/removing**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 52.

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head.

Setting the height

› Grasp the side of the head restraint with both hands and push it upwards as required.
› To move the head restraint downwards, press and hold the locking button A » Fig. 37 with one hand and push the head restraint downwards with the other hand.

Removing and installing head restraints

› Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as it will go.
› Press the locking button A » Fig. 37 and pull out the head restraint.
› To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down into the seat backrest until the locking button audibly clicks into place.

Removing and installing rear head restraints

› Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as it will go.
› Press the locking button in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 37 while simultaneously pressing the locking button into the opening in the direction of the arrow 2 using a flat screwdriver with a maximum width of 5 mm, and pull out the head restraint.

› To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down into the seat backrest until the locking button audibly clicks into place.

WARNING

- The head restraints must be correctly adjusted in order to offer effective protection for the occupants in the event of an accident.
- Never drive with the head restraints removed - risk of injury.
- If the rear seats are occupied, the rear head restraint must not be in the lower position.

Note

For the sport seats, the head restraints are integrated into the front seat backrests. These headrests cannot be adjusted by height or removed.

Seat features

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front seat heating

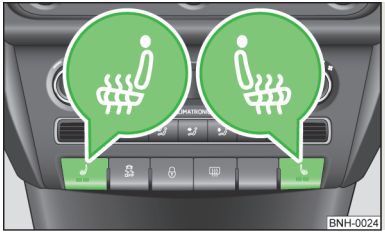

Fig. 38
Heated front seats

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

The seat backrests and seats can be heated electrically.

The seat heating can only be switched on when the engine is running.

Switching on

› Press the corresponding symbol button or » Fig. 38.

Pressing once switches the seat heating on at its maximum level.

With repeated pressing of the switch, the level of the seat heating is down-regulated up to the switch-off. The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the switch.

WARNING

If you have a controlled pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not turn on the seat heater if seats are not occupied.
- Do not switch on the seat heating if the seats have objects attached to or placed on them, for example a child seat, a bag, etc. A fault of the heating elements in the seat heating can occur.
- If additional seat covers or protective covers are attached to the seats, do not turn on the seat heater - there is a risk of damaging the seat covers and seat heating.
- Do not clean the seats using moisture » page 159.

Note

If the on-board voltage drops, the seat heating is switched off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 174, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Front armrest

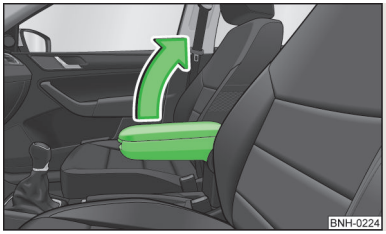

Fig. 39
Adjusting armrest

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

Setting the height

› Lift the armrest fully upwards in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 39 and then move it back down completely.
› Move the armrest into one of the 5 locking positions.

The armrest includes a storage compartment » page 62.

Rear armrest

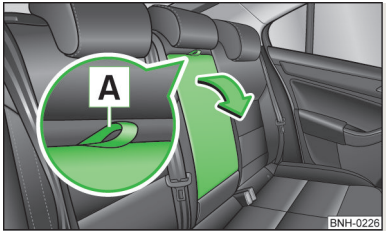

Fig. 40
Fold the armrest forward

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

Folding forward

› Pull on the loop A » Fig. 40 and fold the armrest forward in the direction of the arrow.

A cup holder may be located in the armrest » page 58.

Rear seat backrests

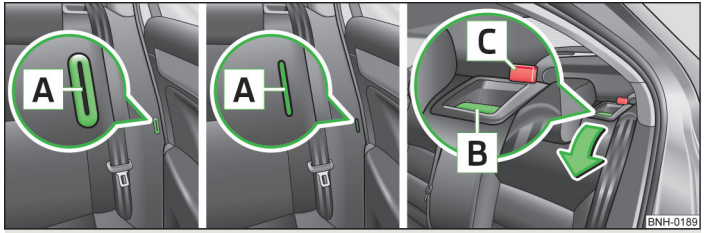

Fig. 41 **Opening for inserting the belt tongue: Rapid / Rapid Space Back / Fold back seat rest forward**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 54.

The luggage compartment can be increased in size by folding the seat backrests forward. The seat backrests can be folded forward individually on vehicles with divided rear seats.

Folding forward

Before folding the rear seats forwards, adapt the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded rear seat backrests[1)].

› Put the belt tongue into the opening A » Fig. 41 on the corresponding side of the vehicle – safety position.
› Press the locking button B and completely fold the back seat rest forward in the direction of the arrow.

[1)] If the front seats are too far back, we recommend that you have the rear head restraints removed before the seat backrests are folded forward. Store the removed head restraints in such a way that they are not be damaged or soiled.

Folding backwards

› If you removed the head restraint, you need to reinsert it with the backrest tilted slightly forwards.
› Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the locking button B clicks into place – check by pulling on the seat backrest » !.
› Make sure that the red pin C is hidden.

! WARNING

▪ The belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
▪ The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury.
▪ Ensure that the rear seat backrests are properly engaged. Only then can the seat belt for the middle seat reliably fulfil its function.

! CAUTION

Ensure that the seat belts are not damaged when operating the seat backrests. Under no circumstances must the rear seat belts be jammed by the folded back seat backrests.

Practical equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! WARNING

▪ Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating or cornering) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – there is the risk of an accident.
▪ When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would then no longer be able to apply the brakes or operate the clutch or accelerator pedal – risk of accident!
▪ No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
▪ Ash and cigarette or cigar stubs must only be discarded in ashtrays!

Car park ticket holder

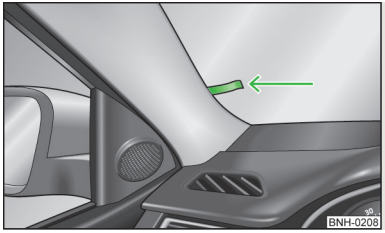

Fig. 42
Parking ticket holder

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

The note holder is designed e.g. for attaching car park tickets.

WARNING

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

Storage compartments in the doors

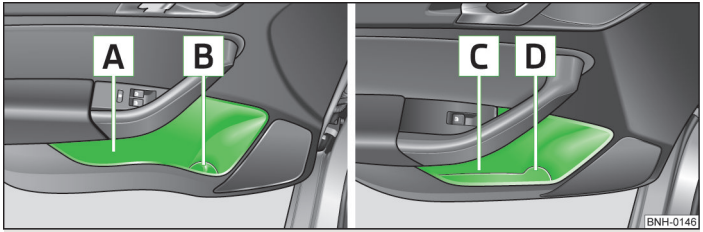

Fig. 43 **Storage compartment: in the front door/in the rear door**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 43

A Storage compartment in the front doors
B Bottle compartment in the front doors
C Storage compartment in the rear doors
D Bottle compartment in the rear doors

WARNING

In order to ensure that the operating range of the side airbag is not impaired, area A » Fig. 43 of the storage compartment must only be used for storing objects that do not protrude.

Note

- In area B of the storage compartment of the front doors, a bottle can be housed with a max. content of 1.5 l.
- In area D of the storage compartment of the rear doors, a bottle with a max. content of 0.5 l can be stored.

Holder for reflective vest

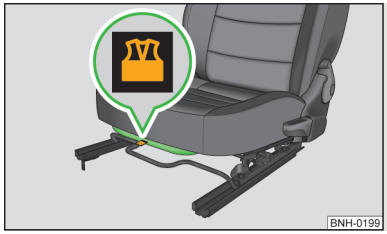

Fig. 44
Driver seat: High visibility vest holder

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

The holder for the reflective vest is located under the driver's seat » Fig. 44.

WARNING

Do not put anything else except the reflective vest into the holder – otherwise it may fall out of the holder – risk of obstruction or limitation in operating the pedal!

CAUTION

Do not put anything else except the reflective vest into the holder – risk of damage to the holder.

Storage compartments in centre console

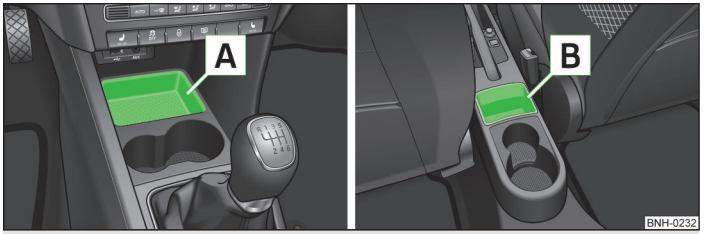

Fig. 45 **Storage compartment: front/rear**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 45

A Open storage compartment at the front of the centre console.
B Open storage compartment at the rear of the centre console.

Cup holders

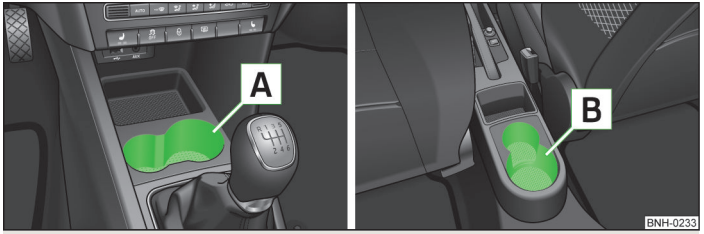

Fig. 46 **Cup holder: front/rear**

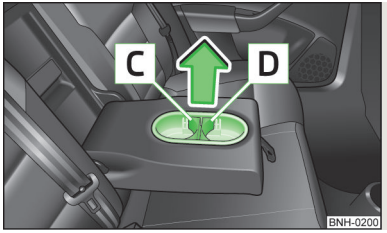

Fig. 47
Rear armrest: Cup holder

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder.

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 46

A Cup holder in front centre console
B Cup holder in rear centre console

Explanation of graphic » Fig. 47

C Removable element
D Removable element

The size of the individual openings can be altered using the removable elements C and D » Fig. 47.

! WARNING

- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.

! CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Cigarette lighter

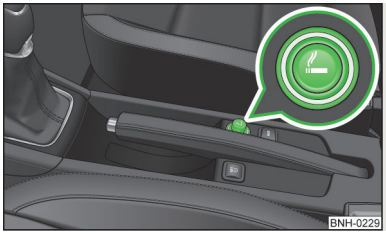

Fig. 48
Cigarette lighter

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

The cigarette lighter is located in the front centre console » Fig. 48.

Using the system
› Press in the button of the cigarette lighter.
› Wait until the button pops forward.
› Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
› Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

WARNING

- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper usage can cause burns.
- The cigarette lighter also operates when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key withdrawn. Therefore never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Note

- The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12Volt socket for electrical appliances » page 60, *12-volt power outlet*.
- Further information » page 149, *Service work, adjustments and technical alterations*.

Ashtray

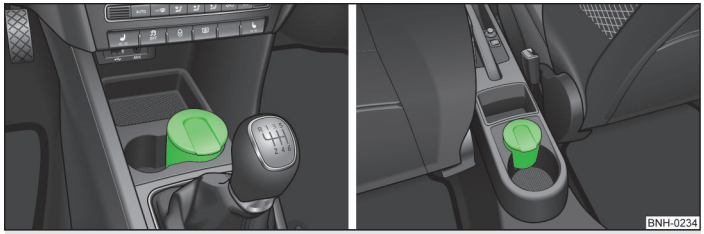

Fig. 49 **Ashtrays: front/rear**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

The ashtray can be used for discarding ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like » !.

Removing
› Pull the ashtray » Fig. 49 out and upwards.

Installing
› Insert the ashtray vertically.

WARNING

Never place flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

CAUTION

When removing, do not hold the ashtray at the cover – risk of breakage.

12-volt power outlet

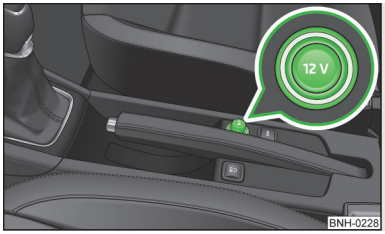

Fig. 50
12-Volt power socket

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

The 12-volt power socket is located in the front centre console » Fig. 50.

Using the power socket
› Remove the power socket cover or the cigarette lighter.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The 12-volt power sockets and any connected appliances can also be operated when the ignition is switched off or the ignition key is withdrawn » !.

WARNING

- Improper use of the 12-volt power socket and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

CAUTION

- The 12-volt power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a total power uptake of up to 120 watt.
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system can be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the 12-volt power socket.
- Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
- Before turning the ignition on or off, and before starting the car, switch off the device connected to the 12-volt power socket to prevent any damage caused by voltage fluctuations.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Waste container

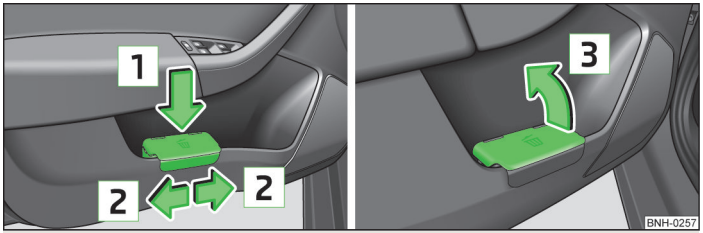

Fig. 51 **Waste container / open waste container**

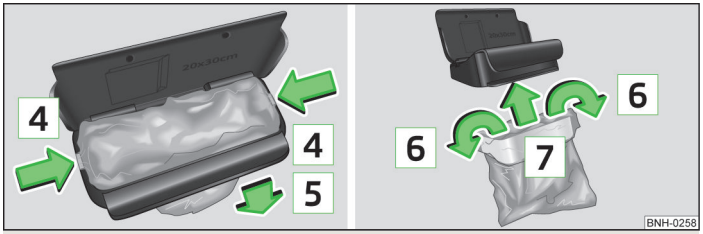

Fig. 52 **Replace bags**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

The waste container can be inserted into the slots in the doors » page 57.

Insert waste container
› Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.

› Push the waste container to the back in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 51.
› Push the waste container as required in the direction of arrow 2.

Remove the waste container
› Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 » Fig. 51.

Open/close waste container
› Open the waste container in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 51.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags
› Remove the waste container from the slot.
› Push the two catches of the inner frame out of the container body in the direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 52.
› Pull the bag together with the inner frame down in the direction of arrow 5.
› Remove the bag from the inside frame.
› Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the frame in the direction of arrow 6.
› Insert the bag with the frame in the direction of arrow 7 into the container body.

The two catches of the inner frame must click into place.

WARNING

- Never use the waste container as an ashtray - risk of fire!
- Only replace the bag when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!

Note

We recommend that you use 20x30 cm bags.

Multimedia holder

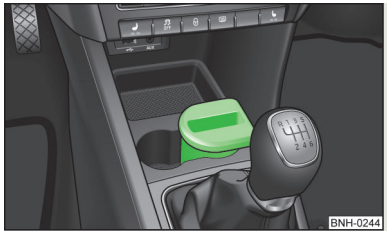

Fig. 53
Multimedia holder

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

The multimedia holder is located in the front centre console » Fig. 53.

You can use this holder to store e.g. a mobile phone, MP3 player or similar devices.

WARNING

Never use the multimedia holder as an ashtray - risk of fire!

Storage compartment in the front arm rest

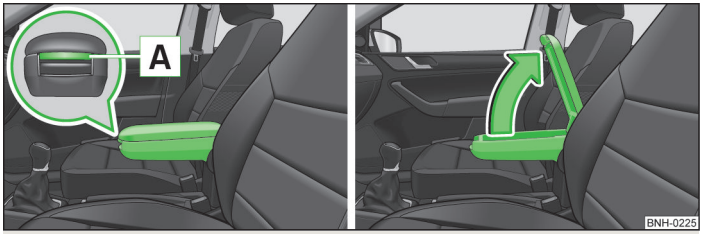

Fig. 54 **Opening the storage compartment**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

Opening

› Press the button A at the front of the armrest » Fig. 54.
› Lift the lid of the storage box in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

› Fold the lid of the storage box back in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 54 until it audibly clicks into place.

Glasses storage box

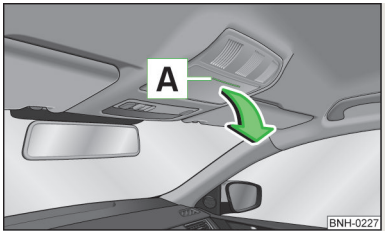

Fig. 55
Opening the glasses storage box

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

Opening

› Press on the lid of the glasses storage box in area A » Fig. 55.

The box folds in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

› Swivel the lid of the glasses storage box against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 55 until it audibly clicks into place.

! WARNING

- The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting the spectacles and otherwise must be kept closed!
- The open compartment restricts the driver's view - there is a danger of accidents!

! CAUTION

- Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box – they may be damaged.
- The maximum permissible load of the glasses compartment is 0.25 kg.

Storage compartment on the passenger side

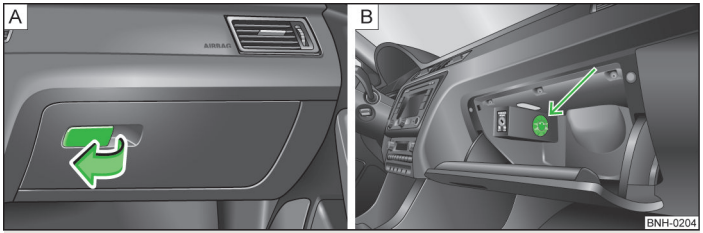

Fig. 56 **Open tray / control air supply**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

Opening

› Pull the lid handle in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 56 - A and fold down the lid.

Closing

› Lift the lid upwards until it clicks into place.

Air supply

› Turn the control dial » Fig. 56 - B anti-clockwise to open the air supply.
› Turn the control dial clockwise to close the air supply.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air inlet when the air conditioning system is on causes fresh or interior air to flow into the storage compartment.

We recommend closing the air supply if it is operated in heating mode or the cooling system for the storage compartment is not being used.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Note

- A 1 litre bottle (max. capacity) can be stored in the storage compartment on the front passenger's side.
- When the storage compartment is opened, a light lights up.

Clothes hook

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle pillar and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors.

WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing; this may reduce the effectiveness of the head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

Storage pockets on the front seats

Fig. 57
Map pockets

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

Pockets for storing maps, magazines etc. are provided on the back of the front seat backrests » Fig. 57.

! WARNING

Never put heavy items into the map pockets – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

Never put large objects into the map pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Meshed pockets on the front seat backrests

Fig. 58
Meshed pocket

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 56.

Meshed pockets for storing small, lightweight objects such as mobile phones or MP3 players are provided on the inner side of the front seat backrests » Fig. 58.

! WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the meshed pockets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the meshed pockets is 150 g.
- Never put large objects into the meshed pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges – risk of damaging the meshed pockets.

Luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

› Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
› Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
› Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or using the nets » page 65.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " ".

Luggage compartment light
The light comes on automatically when the boot lid is opened. If the lid remains open for more than 10 minutes, the boot light switches off automatically.

WARNING

- Store the objects in the boot and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.
- Loose objects could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!
- Please note that transporting heavy objects alters the handling properties of the vehicle due to the displacement of the centre of gravity – risk of accident! The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from moving around, always use suitable lashing straps that are firmly attached to the lashing eyes.
- The transported items must be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward on sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of injury!
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » page 128, *Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats*.
- If the rear seat next to the folded forward seat is occupied, ensure maximum safety, e.g. by placing the goods to be transported in such a way that the seat is prevented from folding back in case of a rear collision.
- Do not drive with the luggage compartment lid open or unlatched, otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Do not transport people in the boot!

CAUTION

Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of abrasive objects.

Note

Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load » page 176, *Service life of tyres*.

Class N1 vehicles

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 64.

In class N1 vehicles that are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set that complies with the EN 12195 standard (1-4) must be used for fastening the load.

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

Fastening elements

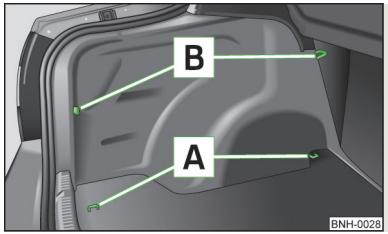

Fig. 59
Lashing eyes and fastening elements

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 64.

The following fastening elements are located in the boot » Fig. 59.

A Lashing eyes for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets.
B Fastening element and eyelet **only** for fastening fixing nets » page 66.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible static load of the individual lashing eyes A is 3.5 kN (350 kg).

Note

The front eyelet B is located behind the folding rear seat backrest » Fig. 59.

Fixing nets

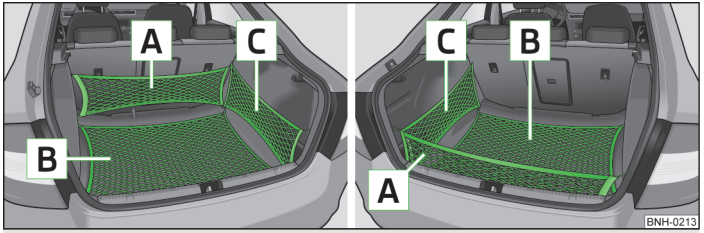

Fig. 60 **Fastening examples for nets**

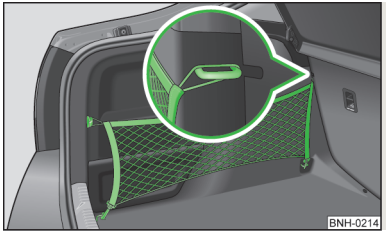

Fig. 61
Fastening vertical pocket

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 64.

Examples for attaching the fixing nets » Fig. 60.

A Horizontal pocket
B Floor net
C Vertical pocket

WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the fixing nets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the fixing nets is 1.5 kg.
- Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of net damage.

Hooks

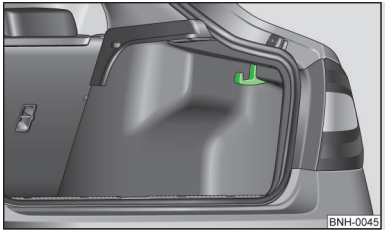

Fig. 62
Hooks

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 64.

Hooks for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc., are provided on both sides of the boot » Fig. 62.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7.5 kg.

Luggage compartment cover

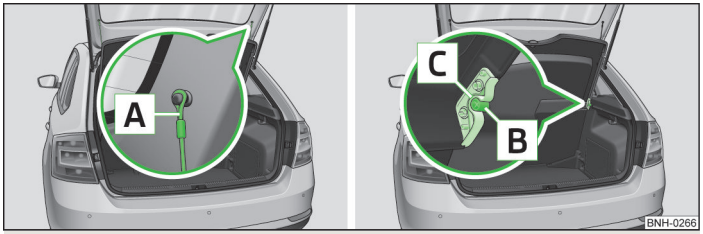

Fig. 63 **Secure luggage compartment cover**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 64.

The boot cover can be removed if you want to transport bulky goods.

Removing

› Unhook the support straps A » Fig. 63 from the boot.
› On the underside of the cover, in the area between the bolts, tap B.
› Remove the cover.

The dismantled luggage compartment cover can be stowed away behind the rear seat backrest in the so called "parking position" » page 68.

Installing

› Place the cover on the contact surfaces of the side trim panel.
› Position the mounts on the cover C » Fig. 63 onto the side trim panel via bolts B.
› Interlock the cover by lightly knocking on the top side of the cover in the area between the bolts.
› Hook the support straps A onto the tailgate.

! WARNING

No objects should be placed on the boot cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.

! CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the luggage compartment cover is 1 kg.
- Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of objects placed in this area.
- When closing the boot lid, jamming and damage to the luggage compartment cover or the side trim panel can occur if handled in an unprofessional way. The following guidelines must be observed.
  - The mounts on the cover C » Fig. 63 must be engaged into the bolts on the side trim panel B.
  - The items which are transported must not exceed the height of the luggage compartment cover in the lower position.
  - The cover must not be jammed in the seal of the boot lid when it is in the opened position.
  - There must be no object in the gap between the opened cover and the rear backrest.

i Note

- If the support straps A » Fig. 63 are attached to the boot, then the boot cover will raise when the boot is opened.
- After removing the luggage compartment cover, store it in such a way that it cannot be damaged or soiled.

"Parking position" of the boot cover

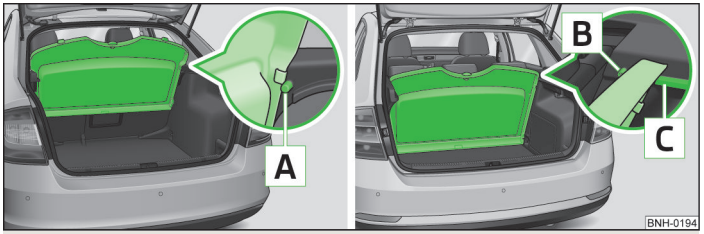

Fig. 64 **Parking position of the luggage compartment cover: Rapid / Rapid Spaceback**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 64.

Adjustment

› Rapid: Slide the dismantled cover between the rear seat backrest and the bolt A » Fig. 64.

› Rapid Spaceback: Slide the dismantled cover between bolt B and contact surface C of the side panel.

! WARNING

- The luggage compartment cover in the "parking position" restricts the driver's view at the back[1].
- When adjusting the "parking position", the boot cover must be between the bolt B » Fig. 64 and the rear seat backrest [2] - risk of damaging the rear seat backrest and the boot cover.

! CAUTION

- The following information applies to Rapid Spaceback vehicles.
  - Before setting the "parking position" of the luggage compartment cover, the variable loading floor must be put in the desired position» page 70.
  - If the luggage compartment cover is in the "parking position", the "parking position" of the variable loading floor cannot be set » page 73[2].

[1] Applies to Rapid.
[2] Applies to Rapid Spaceback.

Storage compartments in the boot

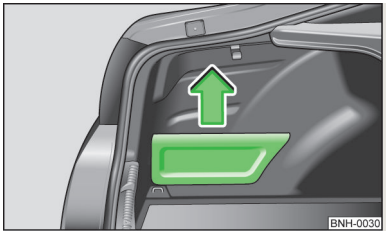

Fig. 65
Remove storage compartment cover (Rapid)

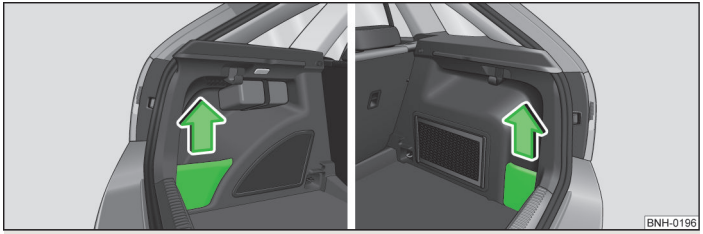

Fig. 66 **Remove storage compartment cover (Rapid Spaceback): left/right**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 64.

The side compartment covers can be removed to increase the size of the luggage compartment.

Removing/Inserting

› Grasp the top part of the cover and remove it in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 65 or » Fig. 66.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

CAUTION

- The storage compartments are designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight in total.
- When using the storage compartment, take care not to damage the storage compartment or the luggage compartment lining.

Flexible storage compartment (Rapid Spaceback)

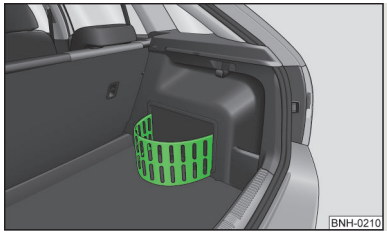

Fig. 67
Flexible storage compartment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 64.

The flexible storage compartment can be installed on the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 67.

Installing

› Place both ends of the storage compartment into the openings on the right side panel of the luggage compartment.
› Push the storage compartment down to lock it.

Removing

› Grasp the storage compartment on the two upper corners.
› Remove the storage compartment by pulling upwards and then towards you.

CAUTION

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

Note

The flexible storage compartment cannot be installed on vehicles with the variable loading floor » page 70.

Meshed pocket for storage (Rapid Spaceback)

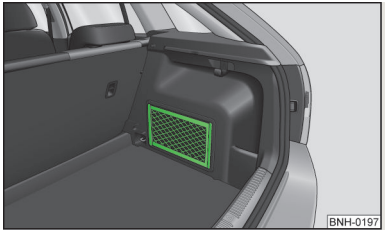

Fig. 68
Meshed pocket for storage

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 64.

The meshed pocket for storage is located on the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 68.

CAUTION

The meshed pocket for storage is designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight in total.

Double-sided floor covering

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 64.

You can fit a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment.

One side of the double-sided floor covering is made of fabric, the other side is washable (easy to maintain).

The washable side is used to transport wet or dirty items.

CAUTION

The two-sided floor covering can only be installed in the luggage compartment of vehicles with the variable loading floor when the variable load floor is in the upper position » page 71[1].

Note

For easier turning of the covering, use the loop attached.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Rapid Spaceback)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The variable loading floor makes handling of bulky items of luggage easier.

The variable loading floor can be set to the upper or lower position.

For easier handling of the spare tire, for example, the variable loading floor can be set to two positions » page 73, *Folding up/down* and » page 73, *"Parking position"*.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor to the lower position or remove it from the vehicle.

[1] Applies to Rapid Spaceback.

Setting in the upper position

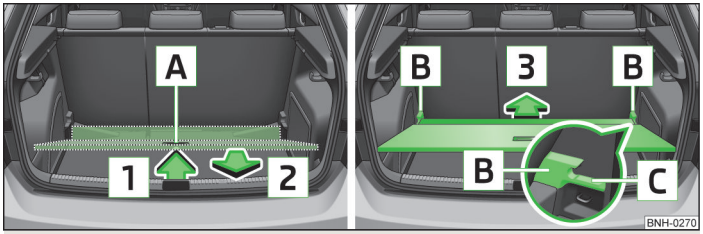

Fig. 69 **Set the variable loading floor to the upper position**

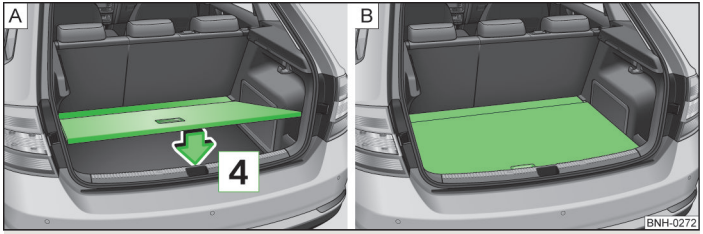

Fig. 70 **Set variable loading floor to the upper position / variable loading floor in the upper position**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 70.

The variable loading floor in the lower position can be set to the upper position as follows.

› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 69.
› Lift the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 1 and move partially backwards in the direction of arrow 2.
› Lift the variable loading floor at the front, place onto corner C and slide in the direction of arrow 3 until it clicks into place in brackets B.
› Place the variable loading floor in the direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 70 A.

CAUTION

When setting the variable loading floor to the upper position, the luggage compartment cover must not be in the "parking position" » page 68.

Note

When in the upper position» Fig. 70 B, there is space for storing items underneath the variable loading floor.

Setting in the lower position

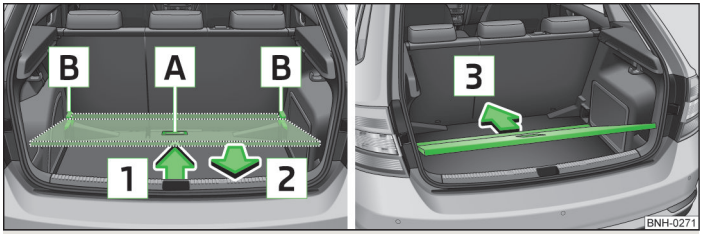

Fig. 71 **Set the variable loading floor to the lower position**

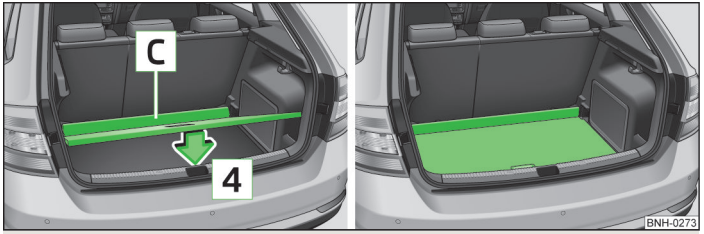

Fig. 72 **Set variable loading floor to the lower position / variable loading floor in the lower position**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 70.

The variable loading floor in the upper position can be set to the lower position as follows.

› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 71.
› Lift the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 1 and partially move in the direction of arrow 2 until it detaches from brackets B.
› Place the variable loading floor onto the floor covering of the luggage compartment while tilted forward.
› Push the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 3 as far as it will go, and until its front part C » Fig. 72 is raised.
› Place the variable loading floor in direction of arrow 4.

! CAUTION

When setting the variable loading floor to the lower position, the luggage compartment cover must not be in the "parking position" » page 68.

Removing/inserting

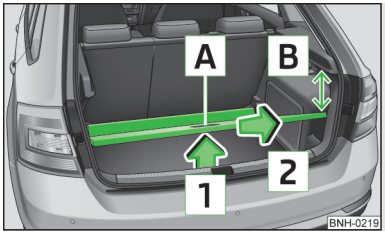

Fig. 73
Remove variable loading floor

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 70.

Removing

› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 73.
› Lift the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 1 until its rear area is about 15 cm B below the luggage compartment cover » !.
› Remove the variable loading floor from the vehicle by moving it in the direction of arrow 2.

Inserting

› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 73.
› Insert variable loading floor into the vehicle with the front portion tilted about 15 cm B beneath the luggage compartment cover» !.
› Then follow the same steps as when setting the upper position » page 71, *Setting in the upper position* or the lower position » page 72, *Setting in the lower position* .

CAUTION

- When removing or inserting the variable loading floor, the maximum distance of 15 cm B » Fig. 73 underneath the boot cover must be adhered to - risk of damaging the boot lid seal.
- When inserting the variable loading floor into the vehicle, the luggage compartment cover must not be in the "parking position" » page 68.

Note

After removing the variable cargo floor, place it down in such a way that it cannot be damaged or soiled.

Folding up/down

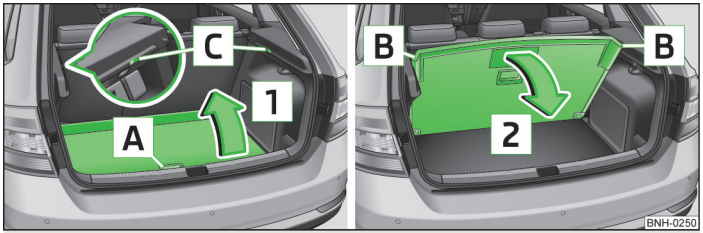

Fig. 74 **Fold up/fold down variable loading floor**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 70.

The variable loading floor can be folded up in both positions (upper and lower).

Folding up

› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 74.
› Lift the variable loading floor in the direction of the arrow 1 until the folding corners B lock into place in area C.

Folding down

› Grasp the variable loading floor in the middle or at handle A.
› Unlock the variable loading floor by pulling it in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 74.

"Parking position"

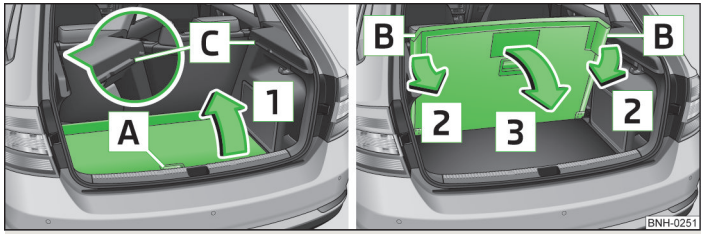

Fig. 75 **Set parking position / fold down from the parking position**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 70.

The variable loading floor can only be in set to the "parking position" when it is in the lower position » page 72 and the luggage compartment cover has been taken out » page 67.

Folding up

› Remove the luggage compartment cover from the vehicle » page 67.
› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 75.
› Lift the variable loading floor in the direction of the arrow 1 until the folding corners B lock into place in area C.

Folding down

› Push the folding corners B » Fig. 75 on both sides of the variable loading floor in the direction of the arrow 2 and remove these from positions C.
› Grasp the variable loading floor in the middle or at handle A.
› Fold down the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 3.

WARNING

The variable loading floor in the "parking position" restricts the driver's view at the back.

CAUTION

- The variable loading floor can only be set to the "parking position" when in the lower position.
- If the variable loading floor is in the "parking position", the "parking position" on the luggage compartment cover cannot be set » page 68.

Roof rack system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- The transported items on the roof rack must be securely attached – risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and permissible total vehicle weight must not be exceeded under any circumstance – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Only use roof rack systems approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.
- When dealing with roof rack systems, the installation instructions supplied with the roof luggage rack system must be observed.
- On models fitted with a power sliding/tilting roof, ensure that the extended sliding/tilting roof does not hit any items of luggage transported on the roof.
- Ensure that the boot lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system and the load that is secured to it. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always remove the roof luggage rack system before entering an automated car wash.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the secured load.

For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

Attachment points

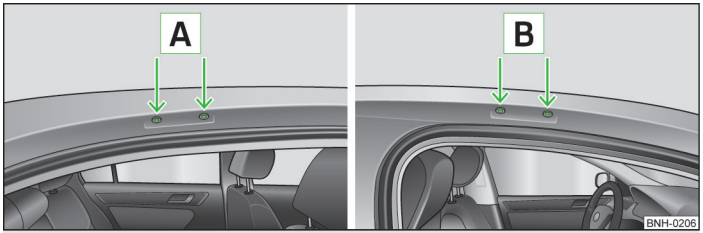

Fig. 76 **Attachment points for roof bars**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

Installation position of the attachment points for roof bars » Fig. 76:

A Rear attachment points
B Front attachment points

Perform the assembly and disassembly according to the enclosed instructions.

CAUTION

Observe the information regarding the assembly and disassembly in the enclosed instructions.

Roof load

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 74.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **75 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions.

Heating and air-conditioning

Heating, ventilation, cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during winter months.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode to enhance the cooling effect.

Please refer to the information regarding recirculated air mode for the air-conditioning system » page 81 or for Climatronic » page 83.

WARNING

For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. Please familiarize yourself about how to correctly operate the heating and ventilation systems, how to demist and defrost the windows, as well as with the cooling mode.

CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free from ice, snow or leaves, for example, to ensure that the heating and cooling system works properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!

Note

- The used air escapes through the vents at the back of the boot.
- We recommend that you do not smoke in the vehicle when the recirculating air mode is operating since the smoke which is drawn at the evaporator from the interior of the vehicle forms deposits in the evaporator of the air conditioning system. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Air outlets

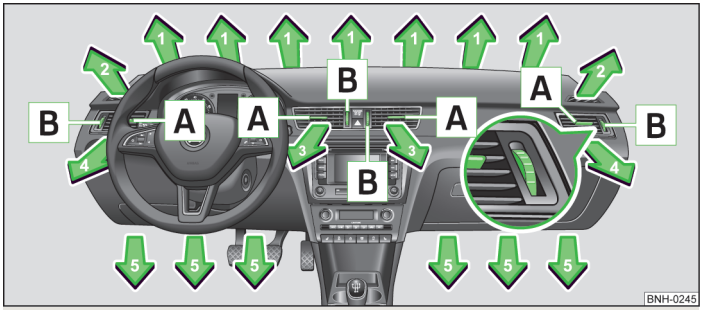

Fig. 77 **Air outlet vents**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 76.

Warmed, unwarmed or cooled air flows out of the air outlet vents depending on the regulator position for the heating or the air-conditioning system and the atmospheric conditions.

On air outlet vents **3** and **4** » Fig. 77, the direction of air flow can be changed and the vents can also be opened or closed individually and the amount of airflow adjusted.

Set the air flow direction

› To adjust the height of the air flow, turn the horizontal fins upward or downward using the movable adjuster A » Fig. 77.

› To adjust the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster A to the left or to the right.

Setting the amount of airflow

› Turn knob B » Fig. 77 upwards all the way to the stop to fully open the air outlet.
› Turn knob B downwards all the way to the stop, to close the air outlet.

The knob can be adjusted to any position in between.

An overview of the available settings for adjusting the direction of the air outlet.

Setting the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet vents
	1, 2, 4
	1, 2, 4, 5
	4, 5
	3, 4

Note

Do not cover the air outlet vents with objects of any kind.

Using the cooling system economically

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 76.

The air conditioning system compressor uses power from the engine when in cooling mode, which will affect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be on if the windows are open.

For the sake of the environment

Pollutant emissions are also lower when fuel is being saved » page 105, *Economical driving and environmental sustainability*.

Operational problems

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 76.

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be.

› One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 197.
› The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » page 11.

If you are not able to resolve the operational problem yourself, or if the cooler output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Heating

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Control elements

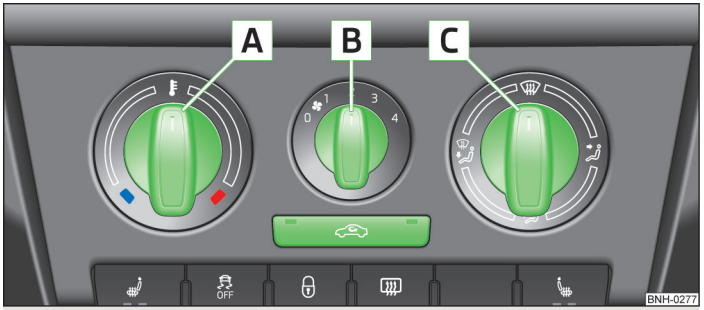

Fig. 78 **Heating: Control elements**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 77.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 78.

- A Set the temperature (turn to the left to reduce the temperature, turn to the right to increase the temperature)
- B Set the blower stage (stage 0: fan off, stage 4: highest blower speed)
- C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 76
- Switch recirculation on/off » page 79

Controls A and C » Fig. 78 can be set to any intermediate position.

WARNING

The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

Adjusting

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 77.

Recommended basic settings of the heating controls.

Adjustment	Control dial settings » Fig. 78 on page 78			Symbol button » Fig. 78 on page 78	Air outlet vents 4 » Fig. 77 on page 76
	A	B	C		
Defrosting the windshield and side windows	To the right up to the stop	3		Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
Free windshield and side windows from mist	Desired temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Open and align with the side window
Fastest heating	As far as it will go to the right	3		Briefly switch on	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Opening
Fresh air mode – ventilation	To the left up to the stop	1-4		Do not switch on	Opening

We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents **3** » Fig. 77 on page 76 in the open position in all operating modes.

Note

If the air distribution is positioned only towards the windows, the total amount of air is used to defrost the windows and thus no air will be fed to the footwell. This can lead to restriction of the heating comfort.

Recirculated air mode

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 77.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, e.g. when driving through a tunnel or in a traffic jam.

Switching on/off

› Press the symbol button.

The indicator light in the button lights up.

› Press the symbol button again.

The indicator light in the button goes out.

Recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control C » Fig. 78 on page 78 is turned to position. Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this position by repeatedly pressing the symbol button.

WARNING

Never leave recirculated air mode switched on over a longer period of time, as "stale air" can cause driver and passenger fatigue, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. Increased risk of accident. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Air conditioning system (manual air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The cooling system only operates if the following conditions are met.

✓ The cooling system is switched on » page 80, *Control elements*.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is above approx. +2 °C.
✓ The blower switch is switched on (positions 1-4).

If the desired interior temperature can also be achieved without activating the cooling system, fresh air mode should be selected.

The cooling system is switched off at excessive coolant temperatures in order to guarantee a cooling effect when the engine is under a high load.

CAUTION

- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.
- Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

Note

We recommend that you have the air conditioning system cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.

Fig. 79 **The air conditioning system: Control elements**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 79.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 79**.**

A Set the temperature (turn to the left to reduce the temperature, turn to the right to increase the temperature)

B Set the blower stage (stage 0: fan off, stage 4: highest blower speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 76

Switch recirculation on/off » page 81

A/C Switching the cooling system on/off

Note

The indicator light in the symbol button **A/C** lights up when the ignition is switched on, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system have been met » page 79.. By lighting up of the warning light in the button, the operational readiness of the cooling system is signalled.

Adjusting

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 79.

Recommended basic settings of the air conditioning controls.

Adjustment	Control dial settings » Fig. 79 on page 80			Symbol button » Fig. 79 on page 80		Air outlet vents 4 » Fig. 77 on page 76
	A	B	C		A/C	
Defrost/defog windscreen and side windows[a]	Desired temperature	3 or 4		Do not switch on	Automatically switched on[b]	Open and align with the side window
Fastest heating	As far as it will go to the right	3		Briefly switch on	Switched off	Opening
Comfortable heating	Desired temperature	2 or 3	/	Do not switch on	Switched off	Opening
The fastest cooling	To the left up to the stop	briefly 4, then 2 or 3		Briefly switch on[c]	Activated	Opening
Comfortable cooling	Desired temperature	1, 2 or 3		Do not switch on	Activated	Open and align to the roof
Fresh air mode – ventilation	To the left up to the stop	Desired position		Do not switch on	Switched off	Opening

a) We recommend that you do not use this setting in countries with high humidity levels. This can result in heavy cooling of the window glass and the following fogging from outside.
b) Automatic switch-on can be deactivated by pressing the symbol button A/C.
c) Under certain conditions, recirculated air mode » page 81 may switch on automatically; the indicator light will then light up in the symbol button.

We recommend that you leave the air outlet vents **3** » Fig. 77 on page 76 in the open position in all operating modes.

Recirculated air mode

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 79.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, e.g. when driving through a tunnel or in a traffic jam.

Switching on/off

› Press the symbol button.

The indicator light in the button lights up.

› Press the symbol button again.

The indicator light in the button goes out.

Recirculated air mode is switched off automatically if the air distribution control C » Fig. 79 on page 80 is turned to position. Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this position by repeatedly pressing the symbol button.

! WARNING

Never leave recirculated air mode switched on over a longer period of time, as "stale air" can cause driver and passenger fatigue, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. Increased risk of accident. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning system)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best-possible setting of the temperature of the outflowing air, the blower stage and air distribution.

The system also takes sunlight into account, which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually.

The cooling system only operates if the following conditions are met.

✓ The cooling system is switched on » page 82, *Control elements*.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is above approx. +2 °C.

The cooling system is switched off at excessive coolant temperatures in order to guarantee a cooling effect when the engine is under a high load.

Note

We recommend that you have Climatronic cleaned by a specialist garage once every year.

Control elements

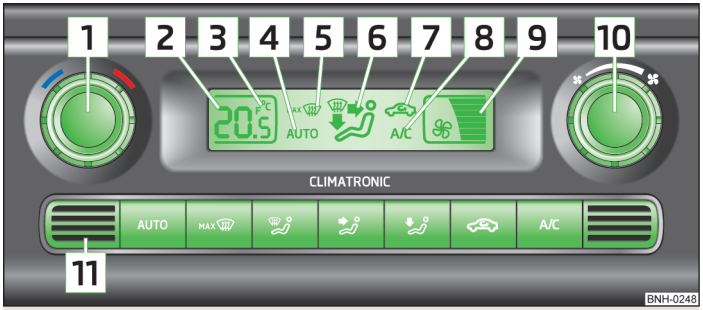

Fig. 80 **Climatronic: Control elements**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 82.

The buttons/control dial

1 Setting the interior temperature » page 83

Display

2 Display of selected interior temperature
3 Degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit, change the displayed temperature units » page 83, *Setting the temperature*
4 Automatic operation of the air conditioning system
5 Ventilation or defrosting of the windshield activated
6 Direction of air flow
7 Recirculated air mode activated
8 Cooling system activated
9 Blower speed set

The buttons/control dial

10 Adjust the blower speed » page 84
11 Interior temperature sensor
AUTO Switching automatic mode on » page 83
MAX Switch the intensive windscreen heater on/off » page 84

Air flow to the windows
Air flow to the upper body
Air flow in the footwell
Switch recirculation on/off » page 83
A/C Switching the cooling system on/off » page 83

Note

Do not stick anything onto or cover the interior temperature sensor 11 » Fig. 80 as this could impair the functioning of the Climatronic.

automatic mode

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 82.

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

Recommended setting for all periods of the year
› Set the desired temperature, we recommend 22 °C.
› Press the button **AUTO**.

The display shows **AUTO** (pos. 4 » Fig. 80 on page 82).

› Set the air outlet vents **3** and **4** » Fig. 77 on page 76 so that the air flow is directed slightly upwards.

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing one of the buttons for the air distribution or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed. The temperature is nevertheless regulated.

Switching the cooling system on/off

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 82.

› Press the button **A/C**.

The symbol **A/C** (pos. 8 » Fig. 80 on page 82) appears in the display.

› Press button **A/C** once more.

The **A/C** symbol in the display goes out.

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation function remains active, whereby the lowest temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Setting the temperature

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 82.

Setting temperature
› Switch on the ignition.
› Turn the control dial 1 » Fig. 80 on page 82 to the left or to the right to increase or decrease the temperature.

The set temperature value appears in the display (pos. 2 » Fig. 80 on page 82).

Switching between Celsius and Fahrenheit
› Press and hold the **AUTO** and **A/C** buttons simultaneously.

The information appears in the display in the desired temperature measuring unit (pos. 3 » Fig. 80 on page 82).

The interior temperature can be set between +18 °C and +29 °C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

If you select the temperature below +18 °C, "LO" appears in the display.

If you select a temperature higher than +29 °C, "HI" appears in the display.

In both limit positions the Climatronic operates at maximum cooling or heating capacity, respectively. The temperature is not automatically regulated in this case.

CAUTION

Lengthy and uneven distribution of the air flow out of the vents (especially around the feet) and large differences in temperature, for example, when getting out of the vehicle, can cause susceptible individuals to catch a cold.

recirculated air mode

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 82.

Recirculated air mode prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, e.g. when driving through a tunnel or in a traffic jam.

Switching on/off

› Press the symbol button .

The symbol (pos. 7 » Fig. 80 on page 82) appears in the display.

› Press the symbol button again.

The symbol in the display goes out.

WARNING

Never leave recirculated air mode switched on over a longer period of time, as "stale air" can cause driver and passenger fatigue, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. Increased risk of accident. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

Note

If recirculated air mode is switched on for around 15 minutes, the symbol will begin to flash in the display as a sign that recirculated air mode has been switched on for a long time. If the recirculated air mode is not switched off, the symbol flashes for around 5 minutes.

Controlling blower

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 82.

The Climatronic system controls the blower stages automatically in line with the interior temperature. However, the blower level can be manually adjusted to suit your particular needs.

› Turn the control dial 10 » Fig. 80 on page 82 to the left or to the right to increase or decrease the blower speed.

If the blower is switched off, the Climatronic system is switched off.

The set blower speed is shown by displaying the corresponding number of segments in icon 9 in the display.

WARNING

- "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases.
- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

Defrosting windscreen

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 82.

Switching on/off

› Press the symbol button MAX » Fig. 80 on page 82.

The symbol MAX (pos. 5 » Fig. 80 on page 82) appears in the display.

› Press the symbol button MAX again or press the AUTO button.

The MAX symbol in the display goes out.

More air flows out of the air outlet vents **1** and **2** » Fig. 77 on page 76. The temperature control is controlled automatically.

Communication and multimedia

Universal telephone installation GSM II

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

ŠKODA permits the operation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a professionally installed external aerial and a maximum transmission power of up to 10 watts.

Please consult a ŠKODA Partner for information about the possibility of installing and operating mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a transmission power of more than 10 W.

Operating mobile phones or two-way radio systems may interfere with the functionality of the electronic systems in your vehicle.

The reasons for this are as follows:
› no external aerial;
› external aerial incorrectly installed;
› transmission power greater than 10 watts.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- The national regulations for using a mobile phone in a vehicle must be observed.

WARNING (Continued)

- If a mobile phone or a two-way radio system is operated in a vehicle without an external aerial or an external aerial which has been installed incorrectly, this can increase the strength of the electromagnetic field inside the vehicle.
- Two-way radio systems, mobile phones or mounts must not be installed on airbag covers or within the immediate deployment range of the airbags.
- Never leave a mobile phone on a seat, on the dash panel or in any area where it can become a projectile during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision — risk of injury.
- The Bluetooth® function must be switched off by a specialist company before the vehicle can be transported by air.

Note

- We recommend that the installation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems in a vehicle be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Not all mobile phones that enable Bluetooth® communication are compatible with the universal telephone preinstallation GSM II. You can ask a ŠKODA Partner whether your telephone is compatible with the GSM II universal telephone fitting.
- The range of the Bluetooth® connection to the hands-free system is restricted to the vehicle interior. The range is dependent on local factors, e.g. obstacles between the devices and mutual interferences with other devices. If your mobile phone is in a jacket pocket, for example, this can lead to difficulties when establishing a connection with the hands-free-system or transferring data.

Introductory information

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II (hands-free system) includes a convenience mode for the mobile phone via voice control, the multifunction steering wheel, the radio or navigation system.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II comprises the following functions.
› Phone Phonebook » page 86.
› Convenience operation of the telephone via the multifunction steering wheel » page 87.
› Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display » page 89.
› Voice control of the telephone » page 90.
› Music playback from the telephone or other multimedia units » page 92.

All communication between a mobile phone and your vehicle's hands-free system is established with the help of Bluetooth® technology.

Phone Phonebook

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

A phone phonebook is part of the hands-free system. This phone phonebook can be used depending on the type of mobile phone.

After the first connection of the telephone, the system begins to load the phone book from the phone and the SIM card into the memory of the control unit.

Each time the telephone has established a new connection with the hands-free system, an update of the relevant phone book is performed. The updating can take a few minutes. During this time the phone book, which was stored after the last update was completed, is available. Newly stored telephone numbers are only shown after the updating has ended.

The update is interrupted if a telephone event (e.g. incoming or outgoing call, voice control dialogue) occurs during the updating procedure. After the telephone event has ended, the updating starts anew.

The internal phonebook provides 2 500 free memory locations. Each contact can contain up to 4 numbers.

If the number of contacts loaded exceeds 2 500, the phone book is not complete.

Control telephone from the multifunction steering wheel - Version 1

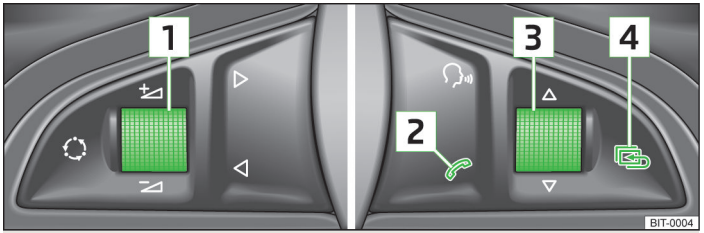

Fig. 81 **Multifunction steering wheel: Control buttons for the telephone**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

To minimize driver distraction when operating the telephone, the basic telephone's functions can be set by simply operating the buttons located on the steering wheel » Fig. 81.

This applies only if your vehicle has been equipped with the universal telephone installation at the factory.

The buttons control the functions for the operating mode of the current telephone.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

Button/adjustment wheel » Fig. 81	Action	Operation
1	Press briefly	MUTE 🔇)
1	Turn upwards	Increase the volume

Button/adjustment wheel » Fig. 81	Action	Operation
1	Turn downwards	Reduce the volume
2	Press briefly	Accept a call/end a call Display of the basic Phone menu → [a] Main Phone menu → List of dialled numbers → Call selected contact
2	Press and hold button	Reject the incoming call
3	Turn up/down	Previous / next menu item
3	Press briefly	Confirm selected menu item
3	Press and hold button	Continuously display first letter of the phone book
3	Quickly turn upwards	To the previous initial letter in the telephone book
3	Quickly turn downwards	To the next initial letter in the telephone book
4	Press briefly	Return to a previous level in the menu
4	Press and hold button	Exit telephone menu

[a] The symbol The → symbol means briefly press button again.

Control telephone from the multifunction steering wheel - Version 2

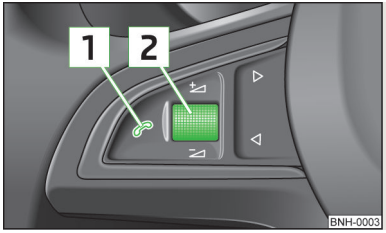

Fig. 82
Multifunction steering wheel: Control buttons for the telephone

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

To minimize driver distraction when operating the telephone, the basic telephone's functions can be set by simply operating the buttons located on the steering wheel » Fig. 82.

This applies only if your vehicle has been equipped with the universal telephone preinstallation (hands-free system) at the factory.

If the parking light is switched on, the buttons and symbols are also switched on and illuminated on the multifunction steering wheel.

Button/adjustment wheel » Fig. 82	Action	Operation
1	Press briefly	Accept call, terminate call, entry in the main menu of the telephone, list of selected numbers
1	Press and hold button	Reject call, last number dialled[a], switch voice control on/off[b]
2	Press briefly	Switch on/off voice control

Button/adjustment wheel » Fig. 82	Action	Operation
2	Turn upwards	Increase the volume
2	Turn downwards	Decrease volume

a) Valid for vehicles with the Amundsen+ navigation system.
b) Valid for vehicles without the Amundsen+ navigation system.

Symbols in the display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

The following symbols are displayed in the Maxi DOT display:

Symbol	Meaning
	Charge status of the phone battery[a]
	Signal strength[a]
	a phone is connected to the hands-free system.
	The hands-free system is visible to other devices.
	A multimedia unit is connected to the hands-free system.

a) This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

Connecting the mobile phone to the hands-free system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

To connect a mobile phone with the hands-free system, the two devices must be paired. Detailed information on this is provided in the operating instructions for your mobile phone.

The following steps must be carried out for pairing[1].

› Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Select the **Phone** - **New user** menu in the MAXI DOT display and wait until the hands-free system has completed the search.
› Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
› Confirm the PIN[2].
› If the hands-free system announces (as standard **SKODA_BT**) on the display of the mobile phone, enter the PIN[2] within 30 seconds and wait, until the connection is established[3].
› To finish pairing in the MAXI DOT display, confirm the creation of the new user profile.

If there is no free space available to create a new user profile, delete an existing user profile.

During the connecting procedure, no other mobile phone may be connected with the hands-free system.

Up to four mobile phones can be paired with the hands-free system, whereby only one mobile phone can communicate with the hands-free system.

The visibility of the hands-free system is automatically switched off 3 minutes after the ignition is switched on and is also deactivated when the mobile phone has connected to the hands-free system.

1) On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system*.
2) Depending on the Bluetooth® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN (SSP) is either displayed, or the PIN **1234** has to be entered manually.
3) Some mobile phones have a menu, in which the authorisation for establishing a Bluetooth® connection is completed by inputting a PIN number. If the authorisation input is required, it must always be performed when re-establishing the Bluetooth connection.

Restoring the visibility of the hands-free system

If you have not managed to connect your mobile phone with the hands-free system within 3 minutes of switching on the ignition, the visibility of the hands-free system can be re-established for 3 minutes in one of the following ways.

› By turning the ignition off and on.
› By turning voice control off and on.
› In the MAXI DOT display under menu item **Bluetooth** - **Visibility**.

Creating a connection with an already paired mobile phone

After switching on the ignition, the connection is automatically established for the already paired mobile phone[1]. Check on your mobile phone if the automatic connection has been established.

Disconnecting the connection

The connection to a connected mobile phone can be ended in the following ways.

› By withdrawing the ignition key.
› By disconnecting the hands-free system in the mobile phone.
› By disconnecting from the user in the MAXI DOT display under the menu item **Bluetooth** - **User**.

Solving connection problems

If the hands-free system reports **No paired phone found**, check the operating status of the mobile phone.

› Is the mobile phone switched on?
› Is the PIN code entered?
› Is Bluetooth® active?
› Is the visibility of the mobile phone active?
› Has the mobile phone already been paired with the hands-free system?

Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 85.

The following menu items can be selected from the **Phone** menu.

› **Telephone book**
› **Dial number**[2]
› **Call lists**
› **Voice mailbox**
› **Bluetooth**[2]
› **Settings**[3]
› **Back**

Telephone book

The **Phone book** menu item lists the contacts downloaded from the telephone memory and the mobile phone SIM card.

Dial number

Any telephone number can be entered in the **Dial number** menu item. The required numbers must be selected one after the other using adjustment wheel and confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0-9**, symbols **+**, **✻**, **#** and the **Cancel**, **Call** and **Delete** functions.

Call lists

The following menu items can be selected in the **Call list** menu item.

- **Missed calls**
- **Dialled numbers**
- **Received calls**

Voice mailbox

In the **Voice mailbox** menu item, you can set the number of the voice mailbox[2] and then dial the number.

[1] Some mobile phones have a menu, in which the authorisation for establishing a Bluetooth® connection is completed by inputting a PIN number. If the authorisation input is required, it must always be performed when re-establishing the Bluetooth connection.

[2] On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system.*

[3] This function is not available in vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system.

Bluetooth

The following menu items can be selected from the **Bluetooth** menu item.
- **User** - Overview of the stored telephones
- **New user** - Search for new mobile phones that are in the reception range
- **Visibility** - Switches on the visibility of the hands-free system for other devices
- **Media player** - Playback via Bluetooth®
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
  - **Search** - Device search
- **Phone name** - option to change the name of the phone (default SKODA_BT)

Settings

The following menu items can be selected from the **Settings** menu item.
- **Telephone book** - Phonebook
  - **Update** - Update the phone book[1)]
  - **List** - Arrange the entries in the phone book
    - **Surname** - Arrange according to surname
    - **First name** - Arrange according to first name
- **Ring tone** - Ring tone setting

Back

Return in the Start menu of the telephone.

Voice control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Dialogue – version 1

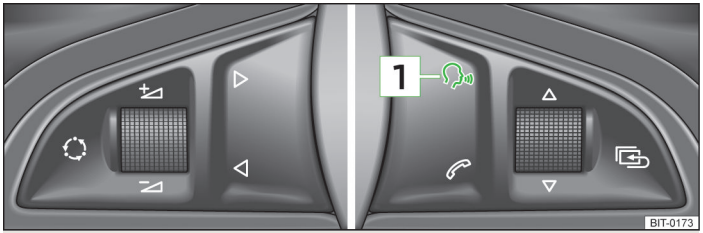

Fig. 83 **Multifunction steering wheel: Voice control**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 90.

The period of time during which the system is ready to receive voice commands and to carry them out is called "dialogue". The system gives audible feedback and guides you through the relevant functions if necessary.

Optimum understanding of the voice commands depends on several factors.
- Speak at a normal volume without intonation or excessive pauses.
- Avoid poor pronunciation.
- Close the doors, windows and sliding roof in order to reduce or eliminate disturbing noise from outside.
- It is recommended to speak louder at higher speeds, so that your voice is louder than the increased surrounding noise.
- During the dialogue, limit background noise in the vehicle, e.g. passengers talking at the same time.
- Do not speak when the system is making an announcement.

The microphone for voice control is housed in the moulded headliner and directed towards the driver and front passenger. Therefore, the driver and the front passenger can operate the equipment.

[1)] On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system*.

Entering a phone number
The telephone number can be entered as a continuous sequence of numbers spoken one after the other (the whole number at once) or in the form of digit blocks (separated by short pauses). After each string of digits (separated by a brief pause in speaking), all of the digits detected up to now are repeated by the system.

The digits **0-9** and symbols **+, ✳, #** are permitted. The system does not recognize any combination of connected numbers, e.g. "twenty-three".

Switching on voice control
Briefly press the button 1 » Fig. 83 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Switching off voice control
If the system is currently playing a message, the message that is currently being played must be terminated by briefly pressing button 1 » Fig. 83 on the multifunction steering wheel.

If the system is expecting a voice command, you can end the dialogue yourself:
› with the **CANCEL** voice command;
› by briefly pressing the button 1 » Fig. 83 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Note

- The dialogue is immediately terminated in the event of an incoming call.
- The voice control is only possible in vehicles fitted with a multifunction steering wheel with telephone control.

Dialogue – version 2

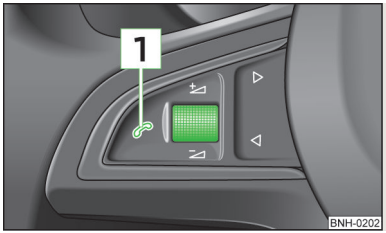

Fig. 84
Multifunction steering wheel: Voice control

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 90.

The period of time during which the system is ready to receive voice commands and to carry them out is called "dialogue". The system gives audible feedback and guides you through the relevant functions if necessary.

Optimum understanding of the voice commands depends on several factors.
› Speak at a normal volume without intonation or excessive pauses.
› Avoid poor pronunciation.
› Close the doors, windows and sliding roof in order to reduce or eliminate disturbing noise from outside.
› It is recommended to speak louder at higher speeds, so that your voice is louder than the increased surrounding noise.
› During the dialogue, limit background noise in the vehicle, e.g. passengers talking at the same time.
› Do not speak when the system is making an announcement.

The microphone for voice control is housed in the moulded headliner and directed towards the driver and front passenger. Therefore, the driver and the front passenger can operate the equipment.

Entering a phone number
The telephone number can be entered as a continuous sequence of numbers spoken one after the other (the whole number at once) or in the form of digit blocks (separated by short pauses). After each string of digits (separated by a brief pause in speaking), all of the digits detected up to now are repeated by the system.

The digits **0-9** and symbols **+, ✳, #** are permitted. The system does not recognize any combination of connected numbers, e.g. "twenty-three".

Switching on voice control
Briefly press the button 1 » Fig. 84 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Switching off voice control
If the system is currently playing a message, the message that is currently being played must be terminated by briefly pressing button 1 » Fig. 84 on the multifunction steering wheel.

If the system is expecting a voice command, you can end the dialogue yourself:
› with the **CANCEL** voice command;
› by briefly pressing the button 1 » Fig. 84 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Note

- The dialogue is immediately terminated in the event of an incoming call.
- The voice control is only possible in vehicles fitted with a multifunction steering wheel with telephone control.

Voice commands

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 90.

Basic voice commands

Voice command	Action
HELP	After this command the system repeats all possible commands.
CALL XYZ	This command calls up the contact from the phone book.
PHONE BOOK	After this command, for example, the phone book can be repeated back to you, a voice entry for the contact can be updated or deleted, etc.
CALL HISTORY	Lists of dialled numbers, missed calls, etc.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command, a telephone number can be entered to establish a connection with the requested party.
REDIAL	After this command the system calls the last dialled number.
MUSIC[a)]	Play music from the mobile phone or another paired device.
FURTHER OPTIONS	After this command the system offers additional context-dependent commands.
SETTINGS	Selection for setting Bluetooth®, dialogue etc.
CANCEL	The dialogue is ended.

a) On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system*.

If a voice command is not detected, the system answers with "**Sorry?**" and a new entry can be completed. After the 2nd error the system repeats the aid. After the 3rd error the answer "**Cancelled**" is given and the dialogue is ended.

Store voice recording of a contact

If automatic name recognition does not work reliably for some contacts, you can choose to save your own voice tag for the contact in the **Phone book** - **Voice tag** - **Record** menu item.

Your own voice entry can also be saved using the voice control in the menu **FURTHER OPTIONS**.

Multimedia

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Music playback via Bluetooth®

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 92.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II makes it possible to play back music via Bluetooth® from the devices such as MP3 player, mobile phone or notebook.

To ensure that music can be played via Bluetooth®, you must first pair the device with the hands-free system in the **Phone** - **Bluetooth** - **Media player** menu.

The music playback process is performed on the connected device.

The universal telephone preinstallation GSM II ensures that the music played back via the hands-free system can be controlled with the remote control » page 92, *Voice commands*.

Note

The device being connected must support the Bluetooth® A2DP profile; refer to the operating instructions for the relevant device being connected.

Operating the radio and navigation system on the multifunction steering wheel - Version 1

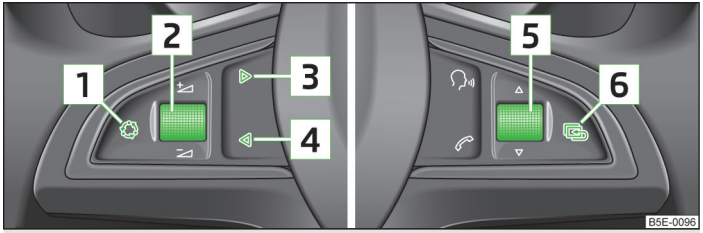

Fig. 85 **Multifunction steering wheel: Navigation control buttons**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 92.

The multifunction steering wheel features buttons for operating the basic functions for the factory-fitted radio and navigation system » Fig. 85.

The radio and the navigation system can of course still be operated via the devices. A description is included in the relevant operating instructions.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

The buttons apply for the respective operating mode of the current radio, audio, video or navigation system.

The following functions can be completed by pressing or turning the buttons.

Button/adjustment wheel » Fig. 85	Action	Radio	Audio sources	Navigation
1	Press	Change audio source		
2	Press	Switch tone off/on (MUTE)		Interrupt current navigation announcement
2	Turn upwards	Increase the volume		
2	Turn downwards	Reduce the volume		
3	Press briefly	Skip to next channel	Skip to next track	No function
		Interrupt traffic report		
3	Press and hold button	No function	Fast-forward	No function
4	Press briefly	Switch to previous channel	Switch to start of track[a)]	No function
		Interrupt traffic report		

Button/adjustment wheel » Fig. 85	Action	Radio	Audio sources	Navigation
4	Press and hold button	No function	Rewind	No function
5	Turn upwards	Switch to the previous station and at the same time display list of saved/available stations	Skip to next track	Show the option to stop navigation or display the list of recent destinations
5	Turn downwards	Switch to the next station and at the same time display list of saved/available stations	Switch to start of track[a)]	
6	Press briefly	Call up the main menu		

a) To go to the previous track, press the adjustment wheel twice or rotate it by two positions.

Operating the radio and navigation system on the multifunction steering wheel - Version 2

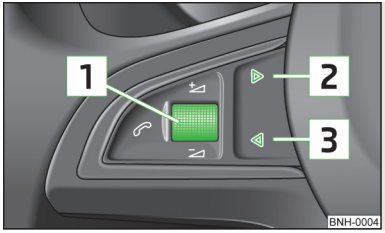

Fig. 86
Multifunction steering wheel: Navigation control buttons

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 92.

The multifunction steering wheel features buttons for operating the basic functions for the factory-fitted radio and navigation system » Fig. 86.

The radio and navigation system can of course still be operated on the devices. A description is included in the relevant operating instructions.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

The buttons apply for the respective operating mode of the current radio or navigation system.

The following functions can be completed by pressing or turning the buttons.

Button/adjustment wheel » Fig. 86	Action	Radio, traffic information	CD/MP3/Navigation
1	Press briefly	Switch off/on tone	
1	Press and hold button	Switch the unit on/off	
1	Turn upwards	Increase the volume	

Button/adjustment wheel » Fig. 86	Action	Radio, traffic information	CD/MP3/Navigation
1	Turn downwards	Reduce the volume	
2	Press briefly	Switch to the next saved radio station Interruption of the traffic report	Changing to the next title
2	Press and hold button	Search forwards	Fast forward
3	Press briefly	Switch to the previous saved radio station Interruption of the traffic report	Changing to the previous title
3	Press and hold button	Search backwards	Fast rewind

Note

The functions of button 1 » Fig. 86 are different for vehicles fitted with a universal telephone installation GSM II » page 87.

AUX and MDI inputs

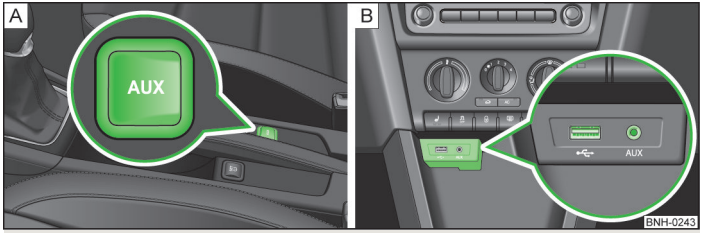

Fig. 87 **AUX input/MDI input**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 92.

Depending on the equipment, your vehicle may have AUX or MDI inputs (AUX and USB) for connecting external audio sources.

The connected external audio sources (e.g. iPod or MP3 player) can then be used for audio playback on your factory installed radio or radio-navigation system.

Extension cables to connect external sources are available from ŠKODA original accessories.

For a description of use, refer to the operating instructions for the relevant radio or navigation system.

AUX input

The AUX input is located in one of the following places:
› Between the front seats in the centre console » Fig. 87 - A;
› On the front of the Amundsen+ navigation system.

Multi-Device Interface (MDI) input
If vehicles are equipped with the MDI input, this will be located above the storage compartment in the front centre console » Fig. 87 - B.

External sources such as iPod®, iPad® or iPhone® connected to the MDI input can be operated via your unit.

When the ignition is on and a device is connected via a connecting cable, the device battery is charged.

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Steering

Introduction

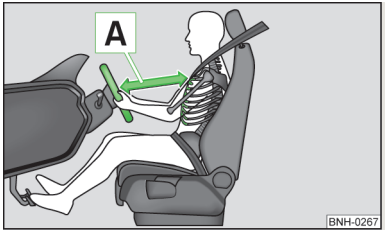

Fig. 88
Correct seated position for the driver

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!

WARNING (Continued)

- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A » Fig. 88between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
- If the steering wheel is adjusted further towards the head, the protection provided by the driver airbag in the event of an accident is reduced. Check that the steering wheel is aligned to the chest.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

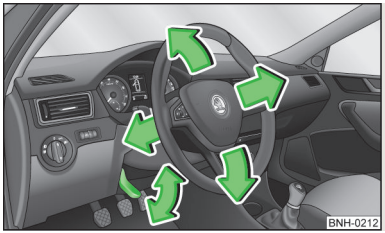

Fig. 89
Adjustable steering wheel: Lever below steering wheel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 96.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› First of all adjust the driver's seat » page 52.
› Swivel the lever underneath the steering wheel downwards » Fig. 89.
› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position (with regard to the height and forward/back position).
› Push the lever upwards to the stop.

WARNING

The lever for adjusting the steering wheel must be locked whilst driving so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position during the journey – risk of accident!

Power steering

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 96.

The power steering enables you to steer the vehicle with less physical force.

The power steering only works when the engine is running.

It is still fully possible to steer the vehicle if the power steering fails or if the engine is not running (e.g. when towing). However, greater physical effort is required to turn the steering wheel.

Starting and stopping the engine

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The engine can only be started using a correctly coded original key.

The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.

WARNING

- When driving without the engine running, the ignition key must always be in the position 2 » Fig. 90 on page 98 (ignition switched on). This position is indicated by the illumination of certain indicator lights in the instrument cluster.
  - If the key is not in position 2, this could lead to unexpected the steering locking - risk of accident!
- Only pull the ignition key from the ignition lock when the vehicle has come to a complete stop (by applying the handbrake). Otherwise, the steering could be blocked – risk of accident!

WARNING (Continued)

- When leaving the vehicle, the ignition must always be removed. This is particularly important if children are left in the vehicle. Children could otherwise start the engine for example – risk of accident or injury!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running.
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!

WARNING

- Never leave the engine running in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust gases from the engine contain substances such as odourless and colourless carbon monoxide (a poisonous gas) – risk to life!
  - Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.

CAUTION

- The starter must only be operated when the engine is not running and the vehicle is at a standstill. The starter or engine may be damaged if the starter is activated when the engine is running 3 » Fig. 90 on page 98.
- Do not tow start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 189, *Jump-starting*.

CAUTION

- Avoid high engine revolutions, full throttle and high engine loads before the engine has reached its operating temperature – risk of damaging the engine!
- Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

For the sake of the environment

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this the engine reaches its operating temperature more rapidly and the pollutant emissions are lower.

Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Electronic immobiliser

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 97.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock.

The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the ignition key is withdrawn from the lock.

The engine will not start if a non-authorized ignition key is used.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

Immobilizer active.
IMMOBILISER

Ignition switch

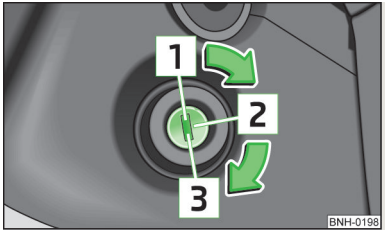

Fig. 90
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 97.

Petrol engines » Fig. 90

1 Ignition switched off, engine off, the steering can be locked
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Diesel engines » Fig. 90

1 Fuel supply interrupted, ignition switched off, engine switched off, the steering can be locked.
2 Heating glow plugs on, ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

To **lock the steering**, with the ignition key withdrawn, turn the steering wheel until the steering locking pin engages audibly.

If the **steering is locked** and it is impossible or difficult to turn the key into position 2 » Fig. 90, move the steering wheel back and forth to unlock the steering.

Note

We recommend **locking the steering wheel** whenever leaving the vehicle. This acts as a deterrent against the attempted theft of your car.

Starting the engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 97.

Vehicles with a **diesel engine** are equipped with a glow plug system. The glow plug warning light illuminates after the ignition has been switched on. Start the engine after the warning light has gone out.

You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Procedure for starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Move the gearshift lever into neutral or move the selector lever into position **P** or **N**.
› Switch on the ignition 2 » Fig. 90 on page 98.

› Depress and hold the clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual gearbox) or brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic gearbox) until the engine starts.
› Turn the key into position 3 to the stop and release immediately after the engine has been started – do not apply the accelerator.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position 2.

› Release the handbrake.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

Vehicles with manual transmission
The engine will not start if the clutch pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Depress clutch to start.**
S **CLUTCH**

Vehicles with automatic transmission
The engine will not start if the brake pedal is not depressed.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and the following message appears in the display.

M **Apply the brake to start.**
S **BRAKE**

CAUTION

If the engine does not start up after a second attempt, the fuse for the fuel pump may have a fault. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 197, *Fuses in the dash panel*, or seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Switching off the engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 97.

Switch off the engine by turning the ignition key into position 1 » Fig. 90 on page 98.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P**.

Brakes

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- The clutch pedal must be actuated when braking on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs. Otherwise, the function of the brake booster may be impaired – risk of accident!
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle could then start to move – risk of accident!

WARNING

- In the event of damage occurring to the standard fitted front spoiler or the retrofitting of another front spoiler, wheel hubs etc. » page 149, *Service work, adjustments and technical alterations*, It must be ensured that the air supply to the front brakes is not impaired. The front brakes may overheat, which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 105.
- Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Information on braking

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 99.

If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Before travelling a long distance at a steep gradient, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Wear-and-tear
The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted.

Under these **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must also be checked by a specialist garage between service intervals.

Wet roads or road salt
The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

Corrosion
Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the bake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times.

Faults in the brake surface
If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage.

Low brake fluid level
An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » page 15, *Brake system*.

Brake booster
The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

Handbrake

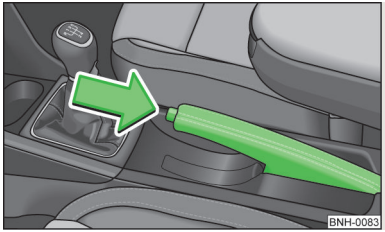

Fig. 91
Handbrake

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 99.

Apply
› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Release
› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the lock button » Fig. 91 .
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light (P) lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Release parking brake!

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 6 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Manual gear changing and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing

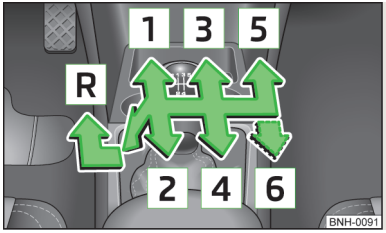

Fig. 92
Gearshift pattern of 5 gear or 6 gear manual gearbox

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 101.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear to the clutch.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 24.

Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary. Depress the clutch pedal and hold it fully depressed. Wait a moment before reverse gear is engaged to avoid any shift noises.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 101.

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's footwell, only a footmat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points, may be used.

Only use factory-supplied footmats or footmats from the range of ŠKODAOriginal Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

WARNING

No objects may be placed in the driver's footwell – risk due to obstruction or limitation of pedal operation!

Automatic transmission

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- Do not depress the accelerator if changing the forward driving mode – risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – risk of accident!
- When the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running, the vehicle must be held in mode **D**, **S** or **R** with the brake pedal. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle crawls.

CAUTION

- If the selector lever is moved to mode **N** while driving, the accelerator pedal must be released and you will need to wait until the engine has reached its idling speed before moving the selector lever to a forward driving mode again.
- At temperatures below -10 °C the engine can only be started in the selector lever position **P**.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Note

After the ignition is switched off, the ignition key can only be withdrawn if the selector lever is in the position **P**.

Modes and use of selector lever

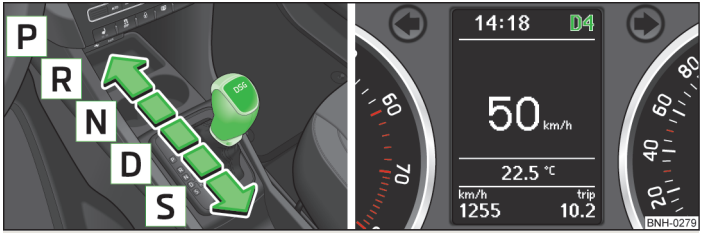

Fig. 93 **Selector lever/display**

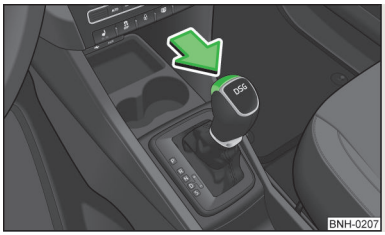

Fig. 94
Shiftlock button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 101.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 93.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 93.

P – Parking mode
The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

Parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

R – Reverse gear
Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

Before moving into mode **R** from mode **P** or **N**, depress the brake pedal while simultaneously pressing the lock button » Fig. 94.

N – Neutral
The power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

D - Mode for forwards travel (normal programme)
In mode **D**, the forward gears are automatically changed according to the engine load, accelerator pedal actuation and driving speed.

S - Mode for forwards travel (sports programme)
In mode **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down **at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

Before changing to mode **S** from mode **D**, press the lock button » Fig. 94.

Releasing selector lever from mode P or N (selector lever lock)
The selector lever is locked in modes **P** and **N** to prevent the forwards travel mode from being selected accidentally and setting the vehicle in motion. The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 21.

The selector lever is released by depressing the brake pedal while while simultaneously pressing the lock button » Fig. 94.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving via position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

Note

If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents modes **R** or **N** from being accidentally selected.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

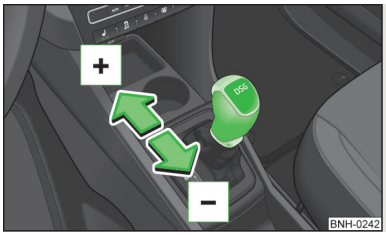

Fig. 95
Selector lever: Manual shifting of gears

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 101.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears on the selector lever. This mode can be selected both while stopping and while driving.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the display » Fig. 93 on page 102.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 24.

Switching to manual shifting
› Push the gear selector from position **D** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle.

Shifting up gears
› Push the selector lever forwards [+] » Fig. 95.

Shifting down gears
› Push the selector lever backwards [-] » Fig. 95 .

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.

If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

Note

It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear on the brakes » page 100, *Information on braking*.

Starting-off and driving

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 101.

Starting off
› Start the engine.
› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Press and hold the lock button » Fig. 94 on page 102.
› Move the selector lever into the desired position » page 102 and then release the lock button.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stop
› Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
› Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

Parking
› Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.

› Press and hold the lock button » Fig. 94 on page 102.
› Move the selector lever into position **P** and then release the locking button.

Kickdown
The kickdown function allows you to achieve the maximum acceleration of your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

WARNING

Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of vehicle control – risk of accident!

Malfunction

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 101.

Emergency programme
The transmission switches to the emergency programme, if there is a fault in the automatic gearbox system.

Indications of an activated emergency programme include the following.
› Only certain gears are selected.
› The reverse gear **R** cannot be used.
› Shifting gears in Tiptronic mode is not possible.

Gearbox overheating
The gearbox may become too hot due to frequent repeated starting or stop-and-go traffic, for example. Overheating is indicated by the warning light » page 13, *Clutches of the automatic gearbox DSG are too hot*.

Defective selector lever lock
If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, faulty fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner, and the vehicle can no longer be driven. The selector lever must be emergency released » page 195.

Note

If the gearbox has switched to the emergency programme, visit a specialist garage.

Running in

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

New engine

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 104.

The engine has to be run in during the first 1 500 kilometres.

Up to 1 000 kilometres
› Do not drive faster than 3/4 of the maximum speed of the gear in use, i.e. 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed.
› No full throttle.
› Avoid high engine speeds.
› Do not tow a trailer.

From 1 000 up to 1 500 kilometres
Gradually increase the power output of the engine up to the full speed of the gear engaged, i.e. up to the maximum permissible engine speed.

The red scale of the rev counter indicates the range in which the system begins to limit the engine speed.

During the first operating hours the engine has higher internal friction than later until all of the moving parts have harmonized. The driving style which you adopt during the first approx.1 500 kilometres plays a decisive part in the success of running in your car.

Never drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds even after the running-in period.

On vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox, at the very latest shift up into the next gear when the red area is reached. Observe the recommended gear » page 24, *Gear recommendation*. **Very** high engine speeds when accelerating (accelerator) are automatically restricted » !.

In vehicles with manual transmission, do not drive at unnecessarily **low** engine speeds. Shift down a gear when the engine is no longer running smoothly. Observe the recommended gear » page 24, *Gear recommendation*.

CAUTION

- The engine is not protected from excessive engine revs caused by shifting down at the wrong time. This can result in a sudden increase in revs beyond the permissible maximum rpm, thereby causing engine damage.
- Never rev up a cold engine when the vehicle is stationary or when driving in individual gears.

For the sake of the environment

Do not drive at unnecessarily high engine speeds. Shifting up sooner helps save fuel, reduces engine noise and protects the environment.

New tyres

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 104.

New tyres must firstly be "run in", as they do not offer optimal grip at first. Therefore, drive with special care for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 104.

New brake pads do not initially provide optimal braking performance. They first need to be "run in". Therefore, drive with special care for the first 200 km or so.

Economical driving and environmental sustainability

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The technical requirements for low fuel usage and economic efficiency of the vehicle have already been built into the vehicle at the works. ŠKODA places a particular emphasis on minimising negative effects on the environment.

It is necessary to take note of the guidelines given in this chapter in order to make best use of these characteristics and to maintain their effectiveness.

Fuel consumption, environmental pollution and the wear to the engine, brakes and tyres depend essentially on the following three factors:
› your personal driving style.
› operating conditions.
› technical requirements.

The fuel economy by can be improved by 10 -15 % by always looking ahead and driving in an economical way.

Fuel consumption is also be influenced by external factors which are beyond the driver's control. Consumption increases during the winter or under difficult conditions, on poor roads, etc.

Fuel consumption can vary considerably from the manufacturer's data, as a result of outside temperatures, weather and driving style.

Such an engine speed should be adhered to when accelerating, in order to avoid a high fuel consumption and resonance of the vehicle.

CAUTION

All the speed and engine revolution figures apply only when the engine is at its normal operating temperature.

Looking ahead

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 105.

A vehicle's highest fuel consumption occurs when accelerating, therefore unnecessary accelerating and braking should be avoided. If looking ahead when driving, less braking and consequently less accelerating are required.

If possible, let your vehicle coast to a stop, or use the engine brake, if you can see that the next set of traffic lights is on red, for example.

Economical gear changing

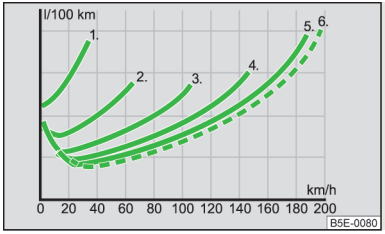

Fig. 96
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km depending on the selected gear

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 105.

Shifting up early saves on fuel.

Manual gearbox

› Drive no more than about one length of your vehicle in first gear.
› Shift up into the next gear at approx. 2000 rpm.

An effective way of achieving good fuel economy is to shift up **early**. Observe the recommended gear » page 24, *Gear recommendation*.

Sensible gear selection can have an effect on fuel consumption » Fig. 96.

Automatic gearbox

› **Slowly** apply the accelerator pedal. However, do not depress it to the kick-down position » page 104.
› An economic driving programme is automatically selected if the accelerator pedal is only depressed slowly.

Avoiding full throttle

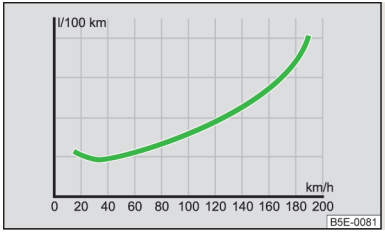

Fig. 97
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in litres/100 km. and speed in km/h.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 105.

Driving more slowly saves fuel.

Sensitive use of the accelerator will not only significantly reduce fuel consumption but also positively influence environmental pollution and wear on your vehicle.

The maximum speed of your vehicle should ideally never be used. Fuel consumption, pollutant emissions and vehicle noises increase disproportionally at high speeds.

The » Fig. 97 shows the ratio of fuel consumption to speed. Fuel consumption will be halved if you drive at only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle.

Reducing idling

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 105.

Idling also costs fuel.

In vehicles not equipped with the START-STOP system, turn off the engine when in a traffic jam, at a level crossing or traffic lights with longer wait times.

Even after just 30 – 40 seconds you will have saved more fuel than that is needed when you start the engine up again.

If an engine is only idling it takes much longer for it to reach its normal operating temperature. Wear-and-tear and pollutant emissions, though, are particularly high in the warming-up phase. Therefore, start driving as soon as the engine has started, though high engine speeds should be avoided.

Avoiding short distances

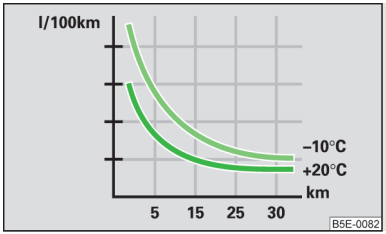

Fig. 98
Principle sketch: Fuel consumption in l/100 km at different temperatures

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 105.

Short distances result in an above-average high fuel consumption. We therefore recommend avoiding distances of less than 4 km if the engine is cold.

A cold engine consumes the most fuel immediately after the start. Fuel consumption drops to 10 litres/100 km after just 1 kilometre. The consumption stabilises once the engine and catalytic converter have reached their operating temperature.

An important factor in this connection is also the **ambient temperature**. The image » Fig. 98 shows the different levels of fuel consumption after driving a certain distance at a temperature of +20 °C and at a temperature of -10 °C.

The vehicle has a higher fuel consumption in winter than in summer.

Checking tyre inflation pressure

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 105.

Tyres which are correctly inflated save fuel.

Always ensure the tyre inflation pressure is correct. If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyres will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will not only increase fuel consumption but also tyre wear and the driving behaviour will worsen.

Always check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyres are **cold**.

Avoiding unnecessary ballast

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 105.

Transporting ballast costs fuel.

Each kilogramme of **weight** increases the fuel consumption. Therefore, we recommend to carry no unnecessary weight.

It is particularly in town traffic, when one is accelerating quite often, that the vehicle weight will have a significant effect upon the fuel consumption. A rule of thumb here is that an increase in weight of 100 kilograms will cause an increase in fuel consumption of about 1 litre/100 kilometres.

At a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, your vehicle that is fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Regular maintenance

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 105.

A poorly tuned engine uses an unnecessarily high amount of fuel.

By having your vehicle regularly maintained by a specialist garage, you create the conditions needed for economical driving. The maintenance state of your vehicle has a positive effect on traffic safety and value retention

A poorly tuned engine can result in a fuel consumption which is 10 % higher than normal.

Check the **oil level** at regular intervals, e.g. when filling up. **Oil consumption** is dependent to a considerable extent on the load and speed of the engine. Oil consumption could be as high as 0.5 litres/1 000 km depending on your style of driving.

It is quite normal that a new engine has a higher oil consumption at first, and reaches its lowest level only after a certain running in time. The oil consumption of a new vehicle can therefore only be correctly assessed after driving about 5 000 km.

For the sake of the environment

- Additional improvements to the fuel economy can be made by using synthetic high-lubricity oils.
- Regularly check the ground under the vehicle. Have your vehicle inspected by a specialist garage if you find any stains caused by oil or other fluids on the ground.

Note

We recommend that your vehicle be serviced on a regular basis by a ŠKODA service partner.

Saving electrical energy

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 105.

When the engine is running, the alternator generates and supplies electrical power. If more electrical components of the electrical system are switched on, more fuel is needed to operate the alternator. We therefore recommend switching off electrical components if these are no longer required.

Environmental compatibility

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 105.

Environmental protection has played a major role in the design, material selection and production of your new ŠKODA. Particular emphasis has been placed on the following points.

Design measures
- Joints designed to be easily detached.
- Simplified disassembly due to the modular structure system.
- Improved purity of different classes of materials.
- Identification of all plastic parts in accordance with VDA Recommendation 260.
- Reduced fuel consumption and exhaust emission CO_2.
- Minimum fuel leakage during accidents.
- Reduced noise.

Choice of materials
- Extensive use of recyclable material.
- Air conditioning filled with CFC-free refrigerant.
- No cadmium.
- No asbestos.
- Reduction in the "vaporisation" of plastics.

Manufacture
- Solvent-free cavity protection.
- Solvent-free protection of the vehicle for transportation from the production plant to the customer.
- The use of solvent-free adhesives.
- No CFCs used in the production process.
- Without use of mercury.
- Use of water-soluble paints.

Trade-in and recycling of old cars

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODA vehicles can be utilized up to 95 % and always [1] be returned.

In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation stating the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

[1] Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

Note

You can find more detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars from a specialist garage.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

General information

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 109.

Pay attention to low-slung parts of the vehicle, such as the spoiler and exhaust, particularly in the following situations.

› When driving on poorly maintained roads and paths.
› When driving over kerbs.
› When driving on steep ramps etc.

Particular attention must be paid for vehicles with sport suspension and when the vehicle is fully laden.

Driving through water on streets

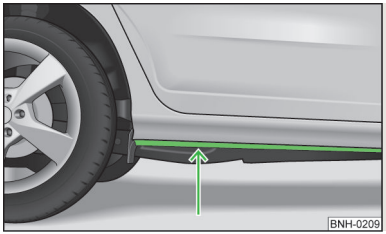

Fig. 99
Driving through water

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 109.

The following instructions must be observed if vehicle damage is to be avoided when driving through water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Determine the depth of the water before driving through.

The water level must not reach above the bar on the lower beam » Fig. 99.

› Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle, which can cause water to penetrate into the engine's air induction system or other parts of the vehicle.

› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.
› Deactivate the START-STOP system before driving through water » page 116, *START-STOP*.

WARNING

- Driving through water, mud, sludge etc. can impair the braking power and increase the braking distance – risk of accident!
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking immediately after water crossings.
- After driving through bodies of water, the brakes must be cleaned and dried as soon as possible by intermittent braking. Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

CAUTION

- When driving through water, some parts of the vehicle such as the engine, gearbox, chassis or electrics can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water. The salt can lead to corrosion. Any vehicle parts that have come into contact with salt water must be rinsed immediately with fresh water.

Note

After driving through water, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage.

Note

You can find out more information on adjusting the headlights at a specialist garage.

Driving abroad

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

In certain countries, it may be possible that the ŠKODA Service Partner network is limited or has not been established. This is the reason why procuring certain spare parts may be somewhat complicated and specialist garages may only be able to make limited repairs.

Unleaded petrol

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 110.

A vehicle fitted with a petrol engine must always be refuelled with unleaded petrol » page 161, *Unleaded petrol*. Information regarding the locations of filling stations that offer unleaded petrol is, for example, provided by the automobile associations.

Headlights

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 110.

The low beam of your headlights is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which the vehicle is being driven to a greater extent.

When driving in countries in which the traffic drives on the other side of the road than in your home country, the asymmetrical low beam may dazzle oncoming drivers. In order to avoid this, the headlights must be adjusted at a specialist garage.

Assist systems

Brake assist systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems would then fail to function – risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. The increased safety provided by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take safety risks – risk of accident!
- In the event of an ABS fault, visit a specialist garage immediately. Adjust your style of driving according to the damage to the ABS, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage or the extent to which this is limiting the braking efficiency.

CAUTION

- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by the manufacturer to ensure the brake assist systems operate correctly.
- Changes to the vehicle (e.g. to the engine, brakes, chassis) can influence the functionality of the brake assist systems » page 149.
- If a fault occurs in the ABS system, the ESC, ASR and EDL will also not work. An ABS fault is indicated by the warning light » page 18.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Fig. 100
ESC system: TCS button

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 111.

The ESC system helps improve control of the vehicle in situations where it is being operated at its dynamic limits, such as a sudden change to the direction of travel. Depending on the conditions of the road surface, the risk of skidding is reduced, thereby improving the vehicle's driving stability .

The ESC system is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The direction which the driver wishes to take is determined based on the steering angle and the speed of the vehicle and is constantly compared with the actual behaviour of the vehicle. In the event of deviations, such as the car beginning to skid, the ESC system will automatically brake the appropriate wheel.

During an intervention of the system, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The following systems are integrated into the **Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**.
› Antilock Brake System (ABS) » page 112.
› Traction control (ASR) » page 112.
› Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) » page 112.
› Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) » page 112.
› Hill Hold Control (HHC) » page 112.

The ESC system cannot be deactivated. The » Fig. 100 symbol button can only be used to deactivate the ASR.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the ASR is deactivated.

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.
› When driving with snow chains.
› When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
› When "rocking a car free" when it has become stuck.

Ensure the TCS is activated again afterwards.

Antilock Braking System (ABS)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 111.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Traction Control System (TCS)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 111.

If the wheels are slipping, the TCS adapts the engine speed to the conditions of the road surface. The TCS makes it much easier to start off, accelerate and climb steep hills even if the conditions of the road surface are unfavourable.

The TCS function is activated automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

If your vehicle is fitted with the ESC system, the ASR is integrated into the ESC system » page 111.

During an intervention of the system, the TCS warning light [1] flashes in the instrument cluster.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 111.

If one of the wheels starts to spin, the EDL system brakes the spinning wheel and transfers the driving force to the other wheels. This ensures the stability of the vehicle and a quick journey.

The EDL switches off automatically in order to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL. The EDL switches on again automatically as soon as the brake has cooled down.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 111.

The HBA increases the braking effect and helps to reduce the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by the very quick operation of the brake pedal. In order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

The HBA function is automatically deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

The ABS is activated faster and more effectively with the intervention of the HBA.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 111.

When driving on slopes, HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

[1] Valid for vehicles without Electronic Stability Control (ESC).

The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

The HHC is active from a 5% slope if the driver's door is closed. HHC is only ever active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off. When driving downhill, it is inactive.

Parking aid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- The parking aid is not a substitute for the driver paying proper attention and it is always the driver's responsibility to take care when reversing the vehicle or carrying out similar manoeuvres. Pay particular attention to small children and animals as they may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Before reversing, you should make sure that there are no small obstacles, such as rocks, thin posts, trailer drawbars etc. behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. Thus, these objects or people who wear such clothing are not recognised by the System sensors.
- External sound sources can have a detrimental effect on the system. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people to not be recognised by the system.

CAUTION

- If a continuous tone sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. Have the fault rectified by a specialist garage.
- The sensors must be kept clean (free of ice, etc.) to enable the system to operate properly.
- The system function may be limited under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.).
- Additionally installed modules such as bicycle carriers can impair the function of the parking aid.

Function

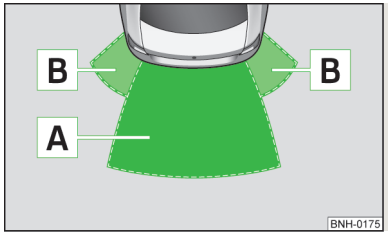

Fig. 101
Range of sensors

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 113.

The parking aid (hereafter referred to solely as system) only works when the ignition is switched on.

The system supports the driver via audible signals and the display on the radio or the factory-installed navigation system when parking and manoeuvring » *Radio user guide, Navigation system user guide.*

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are integrated in the rear bumper.

Explanation of graphic - range of sensors in the vicinity of the vehicle

Range » Fig. 101	Range of sensors[a)]
A	160 cm
B	60 cm

a) These are only the approximate ranges of sensors.

The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area. **From this moment on do not continue reversing!**

The length of the vehicle can be increased with an installed detachable towing device. The danger area thus begins at a distance of around 35 cm on vehicles equipped with a factory-fitted towing device.

Activation/deactivation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 113.

The system is activated automatically by engaging the **reverse gear**. This is confirmed by a brief audible signal.

The system is deactivated by disengaging reverse gear.

Note

For vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, the system cannot be activated when towing a trailer.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed, more than 25 km/h, without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the cruise control system is switched on.

WARNING

- For safety reasons, the cruise control system must not be used in dense traffic or on unfavourable road surfaces (such as icy roads, slippery roads, loose gravel) – risk of accident!
- The saved speed may only be resumed if it is not too high for the current traffic conditions.
- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being switched on unintentionally.

CAUTION

- The cruise control system is not able to maintain a constant speed when driving in areas with steeper gradients. The weight of the vehicle increases the speed at which it travels. In such cases, select a lower gear or brake the vehicle using the footbrake.
- The cruise control system cannot be activated when first gear or reverse gear is selected (vehicles with manual transmission).
- The cruise control system cannot be activated when the selector lever is in positions **P**, **N** or **R** (vehicles with automatic transmission).
- The cruise control system may automatically switch off when some brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervene, when the maximum permissible engine speed is exceeded, etc.

Activating/deactivating

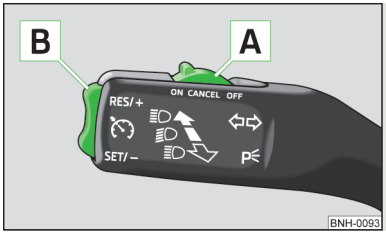

Fig. 102
Operating lever: Cruise control system controls

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 114.

Activating
› Move switch A » Fig. 102 into the **ON** position.

Deactivating
› Move switch A » Fig. 102 into the **OFF** position.

Storing and maintaining speed

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 114.

› Activate the cruise control system » page 115.
› Drive at the desired speed.
› Push the rocker button B into the **SET/-** » Fig. 102 on page 115 position.

After you have released the rocker button B from the **SET/-** position, the speed you have just stored is kept constant without having to depress the accelerator.

Changing the stored speed

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 114.

Increasing the speed with the rocker button B
› Push the rocker button B into the **RES/+** » Fig. 102 on page 115 position.

If the rocker button is held in the **RES/+** position, the speed will increase continuously. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

Decreasing the speed using the rocker button B
The stored speed can be **reduced** by pushing the rocker switch B into the **SET/-** » Fig. 102 on page 115 position.

If the rocker button is pressed and held in the **SET/-** position, the speed will decrease continuously. Release the rocker button once the desired speed is reached. The set speed is then stored in the memory.

If the rocker button is released at a speed of less than approx. 25 km/h, the speed is not stored and the memory is erased. Once the speed of the vehicle has increased to more than approx. 25 km/h, the speed must then be stored again by pushing the rocker button B into the **SET/-** position.

Increasing the speed with the accelerator
› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Decreasing the speed with the brake pedal
The speed can also be reduced by depressing the brake pedal, which temporarily deactivates the system » page 115.

Switching off temporarily

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 114.

The cruise control system can be **temporarily deactivated** by pushing the switch A » Fig. 102 on page 115 into the spring-mounted **CANCEL** position or by depressing the brake or clutch pedal.

The set speed remains stored in the memory.

Briefly push the rocker button B into the **RES/+** position in order to **resume** the stored speed after the clutch or brake pedal is released.

START-STOP

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The START-STOP system helps you to save fuel while at the same time reducing harmful exhaust emissions and CO_2 emissions.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

In the start-stop mode, the engine automatically switches to the vehicle's idle phase, e.g. when stopped at traffic lights. The engine restarts automatically where necessary.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.

✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
✓ The bonnet is closed.
✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km/h after the last stop.
✓ No trailer is coupled.

WARNING

- The brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running.
- Never let the vehicle roll with the engine switched off.

CAUTION

Always deactivate the START-STOP system before driving through water » page 109.

Note

- If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode on vehicles with manual transmission or automatic transmission (when the selector lever in position **P**), the engine must be started manually.
- After manually starting the engine on vehicles with manual transmission, automatic engine shut down is not possible until the vehicle has travelled the required minimum distance for START-STOP mode.
- If, on vehicles with automatic transmission, the selector lever positions **D**, **S** or **N** are selected after driving in reverse, the vehicle will first need to achieve a speed of over 10 km/h before automatic engine shut down can take place again.
- Changes to the outdoor temperature can have an effect on the internal temperature of the vehicle battery even after several hours. If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.
- If Climatronic is running in automatic mode, the engine may not switch off automatically under certain conditions.

Starting/shutting down the engine

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 116.

Vehicles with manual transmission

› Stop the vehicle (where necessary, apply the handbrake).
› Put the gear stick into Neutral.
› Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine shut down (STOP phase) takes place. The warning symbol Ⓐ appears in the instrument cluster display.

› Depress the clutch pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again (START phase). The warning symbol Ⓐ goes out.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.

Automatic engine shut down takes place. The warning symbol Ⓐ appears in the instrument cluster display.

› Release the brake pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again. The warning symbol Ⓐ goes out.

Further information on automatic transmission
Engine shut down takes place when the selector lever is in positions **P**, **D**, **S** and **N** and in Tiptronic mode.

When the selector lever is in position **P**, the engine remains shut down even after you release the brake pedal. Start the engine by pressing the gas pedal or by moving the selector lever into a different mode and releasing the brake pedal.

If the selector lever is moved into position **R** during the **STOP phase**, the engine will re-start.

No automatic engine shutdown takes place when the vehicle is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam or when tuning) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.

Operating conditions of the system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 116.

The START-STOP system is very complex. Some of the procedures are hard to check without servicing.

No engine shut down is carried out
Before each STOP phase, the system checks whether certain conditions have been met. No engine shut down takes place in the following situations.

- The engine has not reached the minimum temperature for the START STOP mode.
- The temperature inside the vehicle has not reached the desired temperature set in the air-conditioning system/heating.
- The external temperature is very low/high.
- The intensive windscreen heater (Climatronic) or windscreen heater/ventilation is switched on with the maximum air temperature setting (manual air conditioning system).
- The parking aid is activated.
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The stationary vehicle is on a steep slope or a steep downhill section.
- The idling speed is too high.
- The steering angle is too large (manoeuvring).
- The selector lever position **R** is selected (e.g. when parking).

The warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster display.

The automatic start procedure takes place again
During the STOP phase, the engine fires up without any active driver intervention, e.g. in the following situations.

- The vehicle begins to roll, e.g. on a slope.
- The difference between the temperature setting of the air-conditioning system/heating and the temperature of the interior is too large.
- The intensive windscreen heater (Climatronic) or windscreen heater/ventilation is switched on with the maximum air temperature setting (manual air conditioning system).
- The brake pedal was pressed several times (the pressure in the braking system is too low).
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The current consumption is too high.

Manually activating/deactivating the system

Fig. 103
Button for the START-STOP system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 116.

Activation/deactivation
- Press the symbol button A OFF » Fig. 103.

When start-stop mode is deactivated, the warning light in the button lights up.

Note

If the system is deactivated during the STOP phase, the automatic start procedure takes place.

Information messages

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 116.

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

M **Start the engine manually!**

S **START MANUALLY**

The driver sees this message when the conditions for the automatic start procedure are not met during the STOP phase. The engine must be started manually.

M **Error: start-stop system**

S **ERROR START-STOP**

Error in the START-STOP system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Towing a trailer

Towing device

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

If your vehicle has already been factory-fitted with a towing device or is fitted with a towing device from ŠKODA Original Accessories, then it meets all of the technical requirements and national legal regulations for towing a trailer.

Your vehicle is fitted with a 13-pin power socket for the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer. If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

The maximum trailer drawbar load is **50 kg**.

WARNING

- Check that the tow bar is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess before the start of every journey.
- Do not use the tow bar if it is not correctly inserted and secured in the mounting recess.
- Do not use the towing device if it is damaged or if there are parts missing.
- Do not modify or adapt the towing device in any way.
- Never release the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.

CAUTION

Take care when handling the tow bar so as to avoid damaging the paintwork on the bumper.

Description

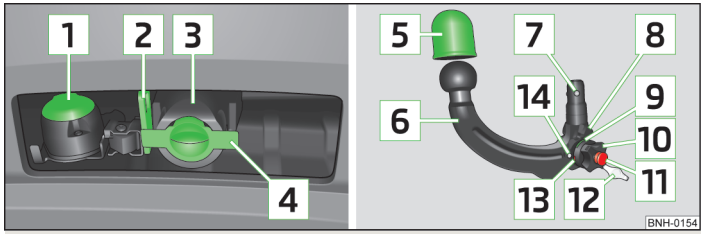

Fig. 104 **Carrier for the towing device/tow bar**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 119.

The tow bar can be removed and is kept in the spare wheel compartment or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the boot » page 183.

Explanation of graphic

1 13-pin power socket
2 Safety eyelet
3 Mounting recess
4 Cap
5 Dust cap
6 Tow ball
7 Locking ball
8 Centering
9 Green marking on the handwheel
10 Handwheel
11 Key
12 Lock cap
13 Red marking on the handwheel
14 White marking on ball bar

Note

On the bottom of the key is a code number. If you lose a key, please contact a specialist garage, who will be able to use this code number to provide you with a new one.

Adjusting the ready position

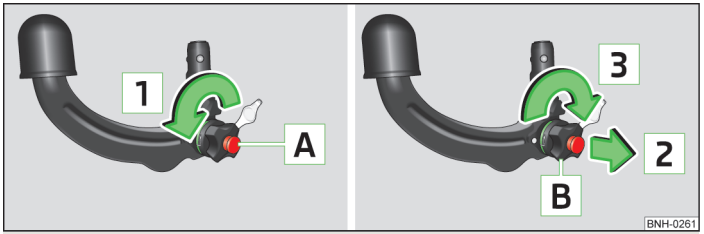

Fig. 105 **Setting the ready position**

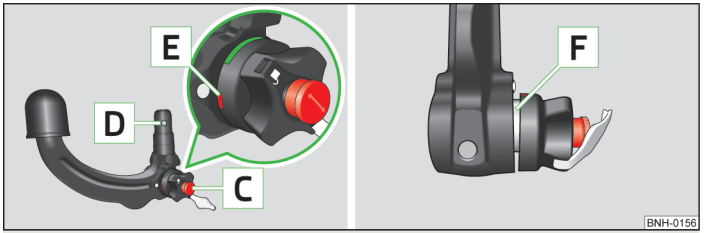

Fig. 106 **Ready position**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 119.

Always adjust the ball head in the ready position before fitting.

› Turn the key A in direction of the arrow 1 to the stop » Fig. 105.
› Hold the tow bar with your left hand.
› Using your right hand, pull the handwheel B in the direction of the arrow 2 and drag in the direction of the arrow 3 to the stop.

The handwheel remains locked in this position.

Ready position » Fig. 106

✓ The key C is in the unlocked position - the arrow on the key points to the "padlock open" icon . The key cannot be removed.
✓ The locking balls D can be pushed fully into the tow bar.
✓ The red marking E on the handwheel points to the white marking on the ball bar.
✓ There is a clear gap of approx. 4 mm F between the handwheel and the tow bar.

The tow bar is now ready to be inserted into the mounting recess.

WARNING

If the tow bar cannot be correctly placed in the ready position, then it must not be used.

CAUTION

When in the ready position, the key cannot be removed from the handwheel lock.

Fitting the ball head

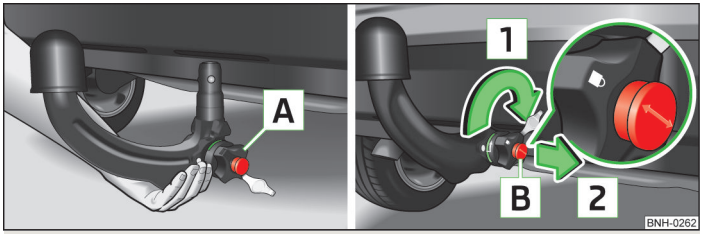

Fig. 107 **Insert the ball bar/lock the lock and remove the key**

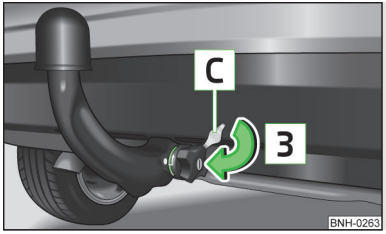

Fig. 108
Fit the lock cap

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 119.

› Remove the cover for the mounting recess 4 » Fig. 104 on page 119 in a downwards direction.
› Put the tow bar in the ready position » page 120.
› Grip the tow bar from underneath » Fig. 107 and insert into the mounting recess until it audibly clicks into place » !.

The handwheel A rotates back **automatically** and rests on the ball rod » !.

› Lock the handwheel lock by turning the key B right as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow 1 - the arrow on the key points towards the "closed padlock" icon.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Fit the cap C on the handwheel lock in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 108.
› Check that the tow bar is securely attached » page 121.

WARNING

- Do not hold the handwheel with your hand when attaching the ball bar - there is a risk of finger injury.
- After fitting the tow bar, always secure the lock and remove the key.
- The tow bar must not be operated with the key inserted.
- If the tow bar is not in the ready position, it cannot be fitted in the mounting recess.

CAUTION

After removing the key, **always** replace the cover on the handwheel lock – risk of lock getting dirty.

Note

Store the cover of the mounting recess in a suitable place in the luggage compartment store after removal.

Check proper fitting

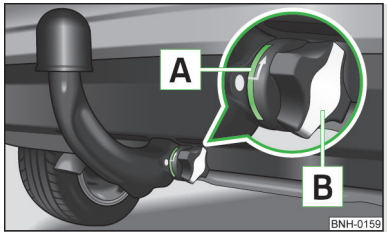

Fig. 109
Check that the tow bar is attached properly

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 119.

Check that the tow bar is fitted properly before each use.

Check the following points.

✓ The green marking A » Fig. 109 on the handwheel points to the white marking on the tow bar.
✓ The handwheel lies flush with the tow bar - there is no gap.

✓ The handwheel is locked and the key is removed.
✓ The cap B is on the handwheel.
✓ The tow bar does not come out of the mounting recess even after heavy "shaking".

WARNING

Do not use the towing device unless the tow bar has been properly locked!

Removing the ball head

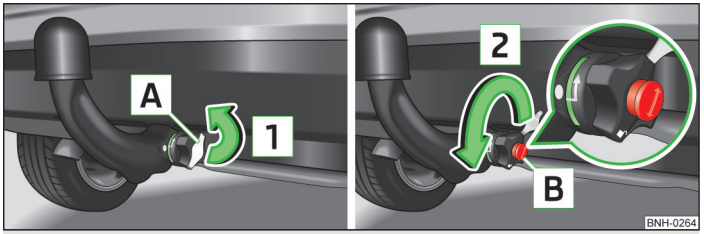

Fig. 110 **Removing the lock cover/releasing the lock**

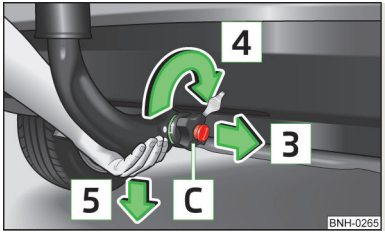

Fig. 111
Release ball bar

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 119.

› Remover the cover A from the handwheel lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 110.
› Insert the key B into the lock.
› Unlock the handwheel lock by turning the key B left as far as the stop in the direction of the arrow 2 - the arrow on the key points towards the "padlock open" icon.
› Grip the tow bar from below » Fig. 111 and with the other hand pull the handwheel C in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Turn the handwheel in the direction of the arrow 4 to the stop, and hold in this position.
› Remove the tow bar from the mounting recess downwards and in the direction of the arrow 5.

At the same time, the tow bar latches into the ready position and is therefore ready to be re-inserted into the mounting recess » !.

› Attach the cover for the mounting recess 4 » Fig. 104 on page 119.

WARNING

- Never allow the tow bar to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage on sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk!
- Never remove the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.

CAUTION

- If the handwheel is not turned all the way to the stop, then it will return to its initial position when the tow bar is removed, and will rest on the tow bar and not engage into the ready position. The tow bar will then need to be brought into this position before the next time it is fitted.
- The mounting recess must be closed with the cover following removal. This prevents foreign bodies from getting into the mounting recess.

Note

- We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.
- Clean any dirt from the tow bar before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Use and care

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 119.

Close the mounting recess with the cover to prevent any dirt from getting in.

Always check the tow bar before hitching a trailer. Apply suitable grease where necessary.

Use the protective cover when stowing away the tow bar, in order to stop the boot from getting dirty.

In the event of dirt, clean the surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

CAUTION

Apply grease to the upper part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

Loading a trailer

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 123.

The vehicle/trailer combination must be balanced, whereby the maximum permissible drawbar load must be utilised. If the drawbar load is too low, it jeopardises the performance of the vehicle/trailer combination.

Distribution of the load
Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure
Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" » page 176, *Service life of tyres*.

Trailer load
The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances » page 207, *Technical data*.

The trailer loads specified apply only to **altitudes** up to 1 000 metres above mean sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the vehicle's climbing power. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

The trailer and drawbar load information on the type plate of the towing device is merely a test value for the towing device. The vehicle-specific values are detailed in the vehicle documents.

WARNING

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible axle and drawbar load and the maximum permissible total or towed weight of the vehicle and the trailer – risk of accident and serious injury!
- Slipping loads can significantly impair the stability and safety of the vehicle/trailer combination – risk of accident and serious injury!

Driving with a trailer

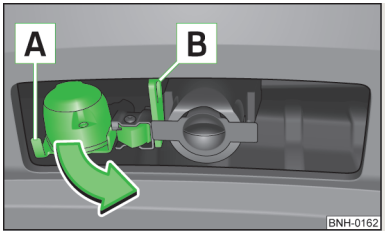

Fig. 112
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 123.

Before the journey
› Grip the 13-pin socket on the handle A and swing out in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 112.
› Lift off protective cap 5 » Fig. 104 on page 119.

After the journey
› Grip the 13-pin socket on the handle A and swing in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 112.
› Place the protective cover 5 » Fig. 104 on page 119 onto the tow bar.

Safety eyelet
The purpose of the safety eyelet B » Fig. 112 is to attach the breakaway cable of the trailer.

When attaching the breakaway cable to the safety eyelet, it must **sag** freely against the vehicle in all trailer positions (sharp bends, in reverse etc.).

Exterior mirrors
You have to have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. The national legal requirements must be observed.

Headlights
The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlights using the headlight beam control » page 41.

Driving speed
For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when towing a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes
Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

Engine overheating
If the needle for the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or the red area of the scale, the speed must be reduced immediately.

Stop and switch off the engine if the indicator light in the instrument cluster starts to flash » page 16. Wait a few minutes and check the level of coolant » page 169.

The following guidelines must be observed » page 16.

The coolant temperature can be reduced by switching on the heating.

WARNING

- Never use the safety eyelet for towing!
- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.
- Improper or incorrectly connected electric cables can energise the trailer and cause functional faults to the vehicle's entire electrical system as well as accidents and severe injuries.
- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.

Note

- After coupling the trailer and connecting the power socket, check that the rear lights on the trailer are working correctly.
- If there is an error in the trailer lighting, check the fuses in the fuse box in the dash panel » page 197.

▪ Contact between the breakaway cable and the safety eyelet can result in mechanical wear on the surface protection of the eyelet. Such wear does not impair the functioning of the safety eyelet and does not constitute a fault. It is excluded from the warranty coverage.
▪ If you tow a trailer frequently, you should also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals.
▪ The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be applied when coupling and uncoupling the trailer.

Anti-theft alarm system

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 123.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated when the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » page 36.

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.

✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and towing device.
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
✓ The vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

Note

For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children.

WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants.
- You can find further information on safety concerning you and those travelling with you in the following chapters of this owner's manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Safety equipment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 126.

The following list contains only part of the safety equipment in your vehicle.
› Three-point seat belts for all the seats.
› Belt force limiters for the front seats.
› Belt tensioners for the front seats.
› Seat belt height adjusters for the front seats.
› Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger.
› Side airbags.
› Head airbags.
› Anchoring points for child seats using the ISOFIX system.
› Anchoring points for child seats using the TOP TETHER system.
› Head restraints adjustable for height[1].
› Adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations.

The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

If the seat belt is not fastened properly, this may result in injuries if an airbag is activated in the event of an accident.

Before setting off

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 126.

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.
› Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
› Check the tyre inflation pressure.
› Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
› Secure all items of luggage » page 64.
› Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.

[1] Not valid for sports seat.

› Adjust the mirrors, the front seat and head restraint to your body size.
› Advise your passengers to adjust the head restraints to their body size.
› Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » page 142, *Transporting children safely*.
› Adopt the correct seated position » page 127. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt. Also inform passengers to fasten the seat belt correctly » page 130.

What influences the driving safety?

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 126.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.
› Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls.
› Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. due to medication, alcohol or drugs.
› Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
› Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
› Take regular breaks on long journeys – at least every two hours.

Correct seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! WARNING

General information
▪ The front seats and head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
▪ If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.
▪ If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.
▪ The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

! WARNING

Information for the driver
▪ Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
▪ Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
▪ When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position. Never hold the steering wheel in the 12 o'clock position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
▪ Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell as they may get caught behind the pedals when driving or applying the braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or accelerate.

WARNING

Information for the front passenger
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – risk to life!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the dash panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury when braking or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you may suffer fatal injuries when adopting an incorrect seated position!

Correct seated position for the driver

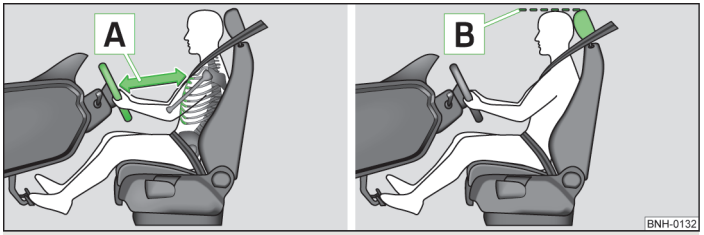

Fig. 113 **The correct distance of the driver to the steering wheel/correctly adjusted head restraint**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 127.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.
› Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A » Fig. 113between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm.
› Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
› Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
› Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head[1] B.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 130, *Using seat belts*.

Driver seat adjustment » page 53, *Adjusting the front seats*.

Correct seated position for the front passenger

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 127.

For the safety of the front passenger and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend the following setting.
› Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
› Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the top of your head [1] B » Fig. 113 on page 128.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 130, *Using seat belts*.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 139, *Deactivating airbags*.

Front passenger adjustment » page 53, *Adjusting the front seats*.

Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 127.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.
› Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the top of your head B » Fig. 113 on page 128» page 128.
› Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 130, *Using seat belts*.
› Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 142, *Transporting children safely*.

[1] Not valid for sports seat.

Examples of incorrect seated positions

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 127.

Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if seat belts are fastened correctly.

Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. Never allow a passenger to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death. This list is not complete, however we would like you to familiarise yourself with this subject.

Observe the following instructions while driving.

- Do not stand up.
- Do not stand on the seats.
- Do not kneel on the seats.
- Do not tilt the seat backrest too far back.
- Do not lean against the dash panel.
- Do not lie on the rear seats.
- Do not sit only on the front part of the seat.
- Do not sit facing to the side.
- Do not lean out of the window.
- Do not put your feet out of the window.
- Do not put your feet on the dash panel.
- Do not put your feet on the seat cushion.
- Do not allow anybody to travel in the footwell.
- Do not drive without fastening your seat belt.
- Do not delay in the luggage compartment.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

Fig. 114
Driver wearing seat belt

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Correctly fastened seat belts hold occupants of the car in the correct seated position » Fig. 114.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

Occupants of a vehicle who have correctly fastened their seat belts have the major benefit of the fact that the kinetic energy is absorbed as effectively as possible by the belts.

The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to the kinetic energy being reduced as effectively as possible. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 142, *Transporting children safely*.

! WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey – even when driving in town! This also applies to the passengers seated at the rear – risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child » page 132, *Fastening and unfastening seat belts*.
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 127, *Correct seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

! WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the correct routing of the seat belt.
- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder – on no account across your neck.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, bunches of keys etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

! WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the seat belts.
- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the proper use of the seat belts.
- Never use one seat belt to secure two persons (including children). The seatbelt must not be placed over a child who is sitting on the lap of another passenger.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked, otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e. g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 55.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for proper maintenance of the seat belts.
- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 159.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced – this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

The physical principle of a frontal collision

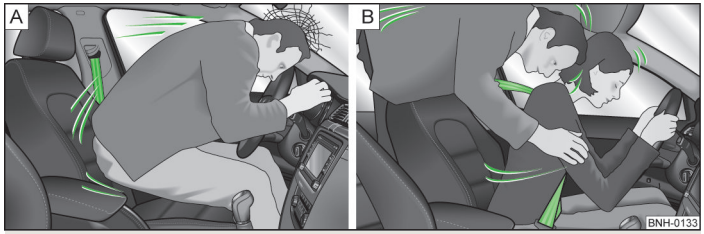

Fig. 115 **Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear passenger without a fastened seat belt**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 130.

As soon as the vehicle is moving, so-called kinetic energy (the energy of motion) is produced both in terms of the car as well as in terms of the occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The idea that it is possible to support your body with your hands in a minor accident is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed of 30-50 km/h, the forces that your body is exposed to in the event of an accident can exceed a metric ton (1000 kg).

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" to 4.8 tons (4800 kg) at 50 km/h.

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt are thrown forward and strike parts of the vehicle interior in an uncontrolled manner, such as the steering wheel, dash panel or windscreen » Fig. 115 - A. In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries.

It is also important that rear passengers fasten their seat belts, as they could otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident.

Rear seat passengers who have not fastened their seat belts are a danger not only to themselves but also to those seated at the front » Fig. 115 - B.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

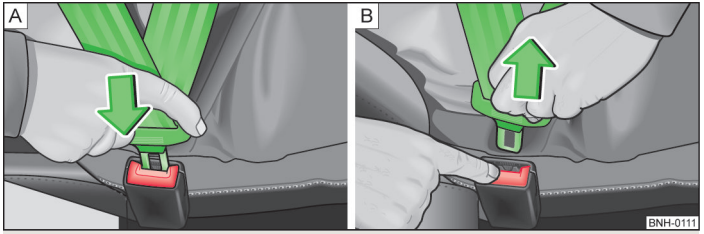

Fig. 116 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

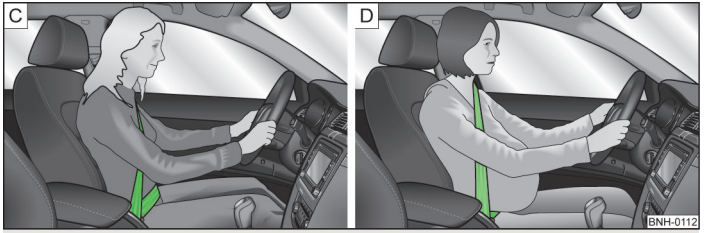

Fig. 117 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 130.

Fasten

› Correctly adjust the front seat and head restraint[1] before fastening the seat belt » page 53.
› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle for the seat » Fig. 116 - A until it audibly clicks into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be positioned across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 117 - C.

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

With pregnant women, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 117 - D.

Release

Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

› Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 116 - B; the lock tongue pops out.
› Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.

! CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

[1] Not valid for sports seat.

Belt height adjustment on the front seats

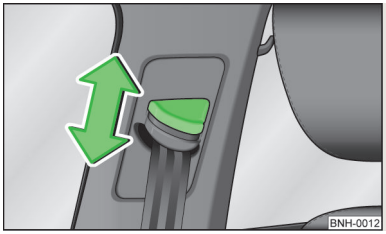

Fig. 118
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 130.

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

› Press the seat belt height adjuster and move up or down in the desired direction » Fig. 118.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Inertia reels and belt tensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reels

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 133.

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel.

The belts also lock when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 133.

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The fastened three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal or side collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. ŠKODA service partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

▪ An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.
▪ The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
▪ To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » page 127, *Correct seated position*.
▪ If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the airbag system.
▪ If there is a fault, the airbag system must be checked by a specialist garage immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
▪ No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
▪ Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
▪ Never make any changes to the front bumper or bodywork.
▪ It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
▪ The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 135.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 20.

When the airbags are deployed, they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following modules.
› Electronic control unit.
› Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » page 137.
› Side airbags » page 138.
› Head airbags » page 139.
› Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » page 20.
› Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 140.
› Warning light for the front passenger airbag deactivation/activation in the middle of the dash panel » page 140.

Note

▪ The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
▪ If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!
▪ When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.

Airbag deployment

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 135.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer additional protection in the event of an accident.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

In certain accident situations, the several airbags may be deployed simultaneously.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear-end collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system.

If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.
› Driver's front airbag.
› Front passenger airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
› Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
› Head airbags on the side of the accident.

In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed:
› the interior lighting comes on (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position),
› the hazard warning light is switched on;
› all the doors are unlocked;
› the fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

Airbag overview

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags

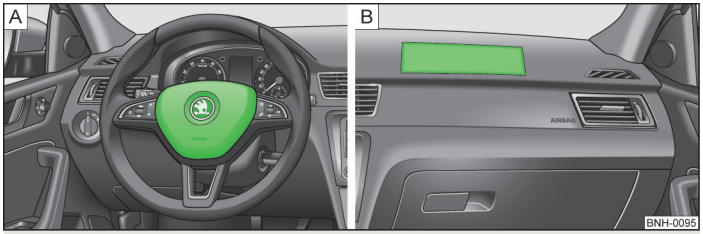

Fig. 119 **Driver's airbag in the steering wheel/front passenger airbag in the dash panel**

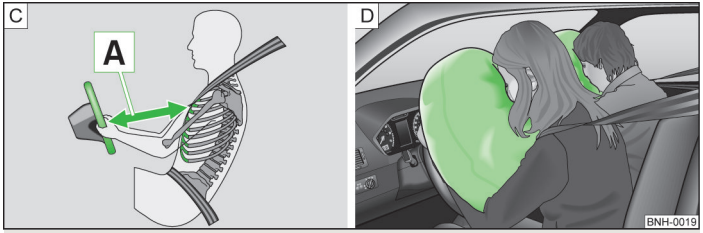

Fig. 120 **Safe distance to steering wheel/inflated airbags**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 136.

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The front airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel » Fig. 119 - A.

The front airbag for the front seat passenger is located in the dash panel above the storage compartment » Fig. 119 - B.

When the airbags are deployed, they inflate in front of the driver and front passenger » Fig. 120 - D. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

WARNING

Correct seated position
- It is important that the driver and front passenger maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or dashboard A » Fig. 120. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not by any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children
- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 139, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

WARNING

General
- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. must be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

Side airbags

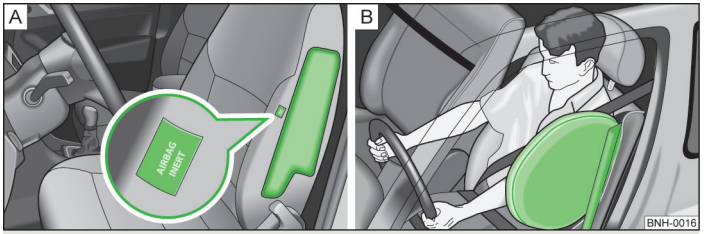

Fig. 121 **Location of the side airbag in the driver's seat/gas-filled side airbag**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 136.

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the front seat backrests » Fig. 121 - A.

When the side airbags » Fig. 121 - B are deployed, the head airbag and belt tensioner are also automatically deployed on the relevant side.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for the correct seated position.
- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 144, *Child safety and side airbag*.

WARNING (Continued)

- There must not be any further persons, animals as well as objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » page 142, *Child seat*.

WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by a specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

Head airbags

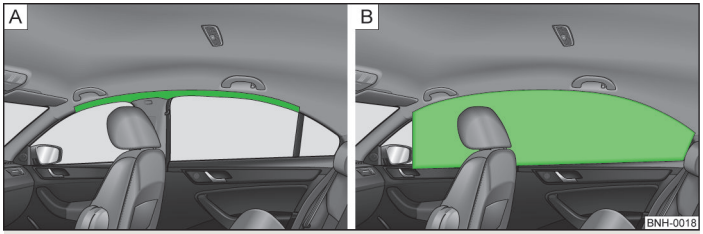

Fig. 122 **Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 136.

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbag system offers additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides of the vehicle interior » Fig. 122 - A.

In the event of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag and the front seat belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs.

When deployed, the airbag covers the window area of the front and rear doors, as well as the area of the door pillar » Fig. 122 - B.

Head impact with interior parts is reduced by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

WARNING

- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.
- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted could be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants » page 149.
- The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must no other persons (e.g. children) or animals between the passenger and the deployment area of the head airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

Note

In vehicles with head airbags, the word AIRBAG can be seen on the B column cladding.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 139.

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones below.

› If using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat (due to different legal regulations, the airbag must be deactivated if using a forwards-facing child seat in some countries) » page 142, *Transporting children safely*.
› If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
› If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
› If different seats have been fitted (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » page 140.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags.

Monitoring the airbag system

The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, including when one of the airbags is switched off.

Airbag deactivated using diagnostic equipment

› The warning light lights up for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes again for approximately 12 seconds.

Front passenger airbag deactivated using the key switch in the storage compartment

› The warning light lights up for approximately 3 seconds after the ignition is switched on.
› The indicator light OFF 3 » Fig. 123 on page 140 lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Note

▪ The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.
▪ A ŠKODA service partner will be able to inform you which, if any, of your vehicle's airbags can or must be deactivated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

Fig. 123 **Key switch for front passenger airbag/warning light for front passenger airbag activation/deactivation**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 139.

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Switching off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position 2 » Fig. 123 **OFF**.
› After switching on the ignition, check whether the warning light 3 OFF [1] is illuminated in writing PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF is illuminated in the centre panel.

Switching on

› Switch off the ignition.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch into position 1 » Fig. 123 **ON**.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.

[1] The warning light OFF comes on for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, goes out for about 1 second and then comes on again.

› After switching on the ignition, check whether the warning light 3 OFF is not illuminated in writing PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF is not illuminated in the centre panel.

WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the OFF warning light is flashing, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in an accident! Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Children are generally safer on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

In contrast to adults, the muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported in accordance with the relevant statutory provisions.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 standard must be used. ECE-R stands for: Economic Commission for Europe – Regulation.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard are identified with a test mark that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed when using child seats.
- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire journey! Otherwise, the child would be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident, causing fatal injuries to both the child and other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Further information » page 143, *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat*.

CAUTION

When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Never use a backwards-facing child restraint system on a seat that is protected by an active airbag installed in front of it. This could cause the child severe injury or even death.

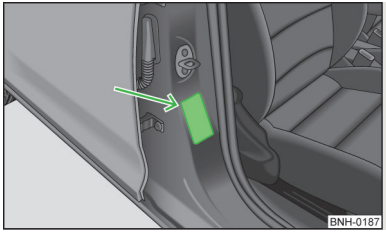

Fig. 124
Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side.

Fig. 125 **Front passenger sun visor / label**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 142.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you install child seats on the rear seats whenever possible.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

› The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat » !.
› If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
› If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
› With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
› Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
› Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
› Place and fasten the child seat on the seat and the child in the child seat according to the specifications in the manufacturer's user manual of the child seat .

! WARNING

- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 139, *Deactivating airbags*.
- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This fact is also indicated by the label that can be found in one of the following locations.
  - On the B-column on the front passenger side » Fig. 124. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door.
  - On the front passenger's sun visor. In some countries, the sticker is located on the front seat passenger's sun visor » Fig. 125.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
- As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be re-activated again.

Child safety and side airbag

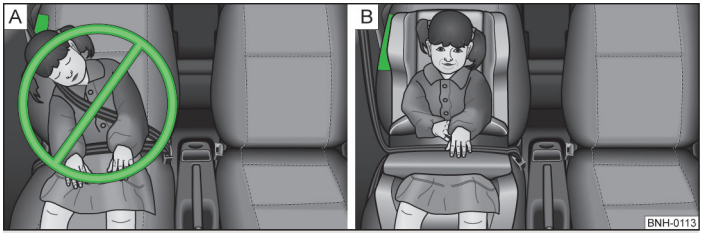

Fig. 126 **Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/child properly protected by child seat**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 142.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 126 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag to ensure that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 126 - B.

! WARNING

- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags – risk of injury!

Classification of child seats

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 142.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0 +	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9-18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15-25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22-36 kg	over 7 years

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 142.

Overview of the usability of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats external	Rear seat centre
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0 + up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U

U "Universal" child seat category - a child seat designed to be attached to the seat using the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Anchor eyelets for the ISOFIX system

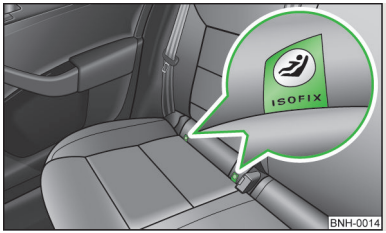

Fig. 127
Labels on the ISOFIX system

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 145.

There are two locking eyes between the rear exterior seats for fixing the ISOFIX system child seat in place. The points are marked with labels with the ISOFIX logo » Fig. 127.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the anchor eyelets intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk to life!

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with an ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 145.

Overview of the usability of child seats with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat[b)]	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0 + up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat[b)]	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
1 9-18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			

a) The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

b) If the front passenger seat is fitted with the ISOFIX system attachment points, it is suited for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the list of vehicles that comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Universal" approval and attachment with the TOP TETHER belt.

X The seat is not fitted with fixing eyes for the ISOFIX system.

Anchor eyelets for the TOP TETHER system

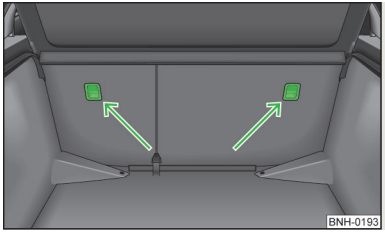

Fig. 128
Anchor eyelets on the TOP TETHER system

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 145.

The anchor eyelets for attaching the belt for a child seat with the TOP TETHER system are located on the back of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 128.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER system on the seats with the locking eyes.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.
- On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.

General Maintenance

Vehicle care

Service intervals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The service interval display in the instrument cluster will remind you to carry out every service stipulated by the manufacturer at the right time in order to prevent you from forgetting any.

Timely and proper performance of servicing works is one of the requirements for the settlement of potential warranty claims.

The completion of services can be verified by the validated service certificate and the corresponding receipts.

The specified service intervals are tailored to normal operating conditions.

In the case of difficult operating conditions, it is necessary to have some service work performed before the date of the next service or between the specified service intervals. This applies mainly to the cleaning or the replacement of the air filter insert in regions with heavy dust pollution as well as checking and replacing the toothed belt, but also to vehicles with diesel particle filters, which can put greater strain on the engine oil.

These difficult conditions are:
› Fuel with sulphur content;
› Frequent short trips;
› Longer periods of engine idling (e.g. taxis);
› Operation in areas with heavy dust pollution;
› Frequent trailer operation;
› Predominantly stop-and-go traffic as is often the case in city driving, for example;
› Operation predominantly during winter.

A service consultant at the specialist garage will tell you whether the operating conditions of your vehicle may make it necessary for service work to be carried out between the normal service intervals.

Different service charges may apply from the particular scope of work required, depending on the vehicle type and equipment and the status of your vehicle.

Note

- The customer is responsible for covering the cost of all services including changing or replenishing the oil, even during the warranty period, unless stated otherwise in the ŠKODA AUTO a.s. warranty terms or other agreements.
- You will be informed about the current service scopes for the particular service work by the specialist garage.

Overview of service intervals

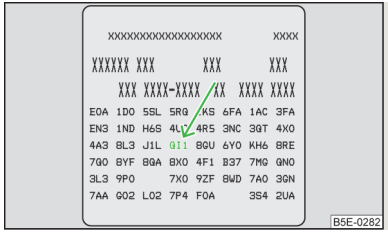

Fig. 129
Vehicle data sticker: Service interval

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 147.

The service interval specified by the manufacturer is indicated on the vehicle data sticker » Fig. 129 under the floor covering in the boot.

One of the following service intervals applies for your vehicle:
› Fixed service interval QI1;
› Fixed service interval QI2;
› Fixed service interval QI3;
› Fixed service interval QI4;
› Variable service interval QI6.

In order to operate a vehicle with a variable service interval, it must only be filled and topped up with the prescribed engine oil.

If this engine oil is not available, the oil change is subject to a fixed service interval. In this case, the vehicle **must** be changed to the fixed service interval.

Note

- The corresponding motor oil specifications » page 167.
- A specialist garage can perform the changeover from the variable service interval to the fixed service interval, or from the fixed service interval to the variable service interval.

Fixed service intervals QI1 - QI4

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 147.

Inspection	QI1 - QI4	After the first 30,000 km or 2 years[a], then every 30,000 km or every 1 year[a].
		Every 15,000 km or every 1 year[a] (applies to Russia).
Oil change service	QI1	Every 5000 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI2	Every 7500 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI3	Every 10,000 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI4	Every 15,000 km or every 1 year[a].
Brake fluid change		First change after 3 years, then every 2 years

[a] (whichever comes first).

WARNING

The brake fluid must always be changed after the first 3 years and then every 2 years. Longer intervals between changing the brake fluid can cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system on sharp braking. This can impair the efficiency of the brakes – risk of accident!

Note

For diesel operation with a high sulphur content, the oil must be changed every 7500 km. Ask your specialist garage for information on the countries where diesel fuel has a high sulphur content.

Variable service interval QI6

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 147.

The service intervals depend on the intensity at which the vehicle is driven and the local conditions in which the vehicle is used. For example, your vehicle is subjected to different loads when driven over short distances than when driven over long distances. The service intervals are therefore **variable**.

Inspection	After the first 30,000 km or 2 years[a], then every 30,000 km or every 1 year[a].
Oil change service	According to the service interval display (at the latest after 30,000 km or 2 years[a]).
Brake fluid change	First change after 3 years, then every 2 years

[a] (whichever comes first).

WARNING

The brake fluid must always be changed after the first 3 years and then every 2 years. Longer intervals between changing the brake fluid can cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system on sharp braking. This can impair the efficiency of the brakes – risk of accident!

Information about the ŠKODA service

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 147.

You have access to an extensive servicing network of ŠKODA Service Partners for the maintenance of your vehicle.

The ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern and specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts and ŠKODA Genuine Accessories at their disposal.

All ŠKODA Service Partners operate in accordance with the latest manufacturer guidelines and instructions. All service work is therefore carried out on time and in accordance with the quality standards. Adhering to these guidelines and instructions helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

The ŠKODA Service Partners also offer a wide range of other services.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly equipped to service your vehicle and to provide high-quality work. We therefore recommend that you have your vehicle maintained by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition. After carrying out modifications, repairs or technical alterations, the vehicle will comply with German road transport regulations (StVZO).

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » page 150 before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

WARNING

- If work on your vehicle is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.
- We recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage.
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and can lead to increased wear of parts.
- The ŠKODA Partner accepts no liability for products that have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with an operational approval or that have been approved by a government testing institute.

WARNING

- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners, who will also perform the professional assembly of the purchased parts.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding alterations carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user in order to be handed over to the recyclers at a later date. This ensures that the vehicle is recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

Note

Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the warranty.

Tests required by law

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability and roadworthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at specific intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorized for this purpose.

The ŠKODA Service Partners are up-to-date on the legally required tests and will prepare the vehicle for the tests as part of a service operation if required, or will be responsible for carrying out these tests. The specialist garages can carry out the specified tests directly if required by the customer if they are authorised to do so. This saves you time and money.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation of a legally required test, we recommend that you consult the service consultant of your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand.

Based on their appraisal, the service consultant will tell you which areas you should focus on in order to ensure that your vehicle will pass the technical test without any problems. This allows you to avoid additional expenses resulting from a possible subsequent test.

ŠKODA Service Partners

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Genuine Parts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.. They correspond precisely to the ŠKODA AUTO a.s. regulations with regard to design, dimensional accuracy and material, and are identical to the components used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. is able to vouch for the safety, suitability and long service life of these products. We therefore recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. supplies the market with a complete range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts - not only while the model is still in production but for at least 15 years after the end of series production for wear parts and at least 10 years after the end of series production for all other vehicle parts.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these components for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

Body repairs

ŠKODA vehicles are designed such that if any damage occurs to the body, it is only necessary to replace those parts that are actually damaged.

However, before you decide to have damaged body parts replaced, you should first of all contact your specialist garage to determine whether or not the parts can also be repaired. Repairs to body parts are usually cheaper.

ŠKODA Genuine Accessories

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has selected these accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch for other products even though in some instances such parts may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

All accessory products are subjected to a challenging process in the areas of technical development (technical testing) and quality inspection (customer testing), and the product only becomes a ŠKODA Genuine Accessory if all tests are passed.

Our ŠKODA Genuine Accessories service also includes expert advice and professional fitting if required by the customer.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these accessories for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

ŠKODA Service Partners also stock a range of suitable car care products and all parts that are subject to natural wear-and-tear, such as tyres, batteries, bulbs and wiper blades.

Note

The accessories authorized by the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will be offered by the ŠKODA Partners in all countries where the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has a sales and after-sales service network. This will usually be in the form of a printed catalogue of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in the form of separate printed brochures or in the form of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories on the ŠKODA Partner websites.

Spoiler

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

If your new vehicle is fitted with a **spoiler** on the front bumper in combination with the **spoiler** on the luggage compartment lid, the following instructions must be adhered to.

› For safety reasons, the vehicle must only be fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

WARNING

If work on your vehicle's spoilers is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries!

Airbags

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 149.

The system components of the airbag system can be situated in the front bumper, doors, front seats, roof lining or body.

WARNING

Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed. Airbag modules cannot be repaired.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for handling the airbag system.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never install damaged airbag parts in the vehicle. The airbags may then not be deployed properly or even at all in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.

WARNING

- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.

Washing your car

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

How often the vehicle should be washed depends on factors such as:
› Frequency of use.
› Parking situation (garage, under trees etc.).
› Season.
› Weather conditions.
› Environmental influences.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

WARNING

- When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!
- Only wash the vehicle when the ignition is switched off – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

Washing by hand

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 152.

Soak the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as well as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a **washing brush**. Work from the top to the bottom – starting with the roof.

Only use a **car shampoo** for stubborn dirt.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

CAUTION

- When washing the car by hand, protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts (e.g. when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims, etc.) - There is a risk of cuts!
- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.

Automatic car wash systems

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 152.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the lips of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

WARNING

Fold in the exterior mirrors to prevent damage before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 152.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

WARNING

Never use circular spray nozzles or dirt cutters!

CAUTION

- If washing the vehicle in the winter using a hose or high-pressure cleaner, ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or the door/panel joints – risk of freezing!
- To avoid damaging the parking aid sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.
- The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – risk of damaging the vehicle.
- See also Washing cars with decorative films using a high-pressure cleaner » page 155.

Taking care of your vehicle exterior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Regular and proper care help to retain the efficiency and **value** of your vehicle. It may also be one of the requirements for the acceptance of warranty claims relating to corrosion damage and paint defects on the bodywork.

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always store vehicle care products safely, in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of your vehicle's exterior, we recommend that the cleaning and care of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Taking care of your vehicle's paintwork

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 153.

Minor paint damage such as scratches, scuffs or stone chips should be treated immediately if possible, using **touch-up pens** or **sprays**.

Preserving the vehicle paintwork
A thorough wax treatment provides the vehicle's paintwork with highly effective protection against harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing
Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

CAUTION

- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any paint care products to parts of the bodywork that come into contact with door seals or window guides.

Plastic parts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 153.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the plastic parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

CAUTION

Do not use paint care products on plastic parts.

Rubber seals

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 153.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer to prevent the freezing of painted body parts and to protect against driving noise.

Do not treat the door seals and window guides with any products **whatsoever**.

CAUTION

Applying additional treatments to the seals can corrode the protective coating, and driving noise may occur.

Chrome parts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 153.

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean chrome parts, use a specific chrome care product.

CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.

Decorative films

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 153.

Wash the films with a mild soap solution and clean, warm water. Never use harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents, as this could damage the films.

The following instructions must be followed when washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner.

- The minimum distance between the nozzle and the vehicle body should be 50 cm.
- Keep jet perpendicular to the film surface.
- The maximum water temperature is 50 °C.
- The maximum water pressure is 80 bar.

CAUTION

In the winter months, do not use an ice scraper to remove ice and snow from the areas with films. Do not use any other objects to remove frozen layers of snow or ice – risk of film damage.

Windows and exterior mirrors

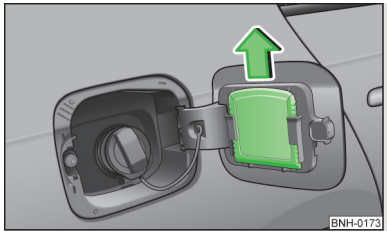

Fig. 130
Fuel filler flap: Ice scraper

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 153.

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

The ice scraper can be found on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

- Open the fuel filler flap.
- Slide out the ice scraper in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 130.

Regularly clean windows from the inside with clean water.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can make the window dirty and reduce visibility.

CAUTION

- The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
- Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand or salt must not be removed from the windows and mirrors – there is a risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
- Do not remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water – risk of cracks forming in the glass.
- When removing snow or ice from windows and mirror lenses ensure that the paintwork of the vehicle is not to damage.
- Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents – there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.

Headlight lenses

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 153.

Clean plastic front headlight lenses using clean, warm water and soap.

CAUTION

- **Never** wipe headlights with a dry cloth.
- Do not use any sharp objects to clean the plastic lenses, as this may damage the protective paintwork and consequently cause cracks to form on the headlight lenses.
- Do not use any harsh cleaning products or chemical solvents to clean the headlights, as this could damage the headlight lenses.

Door lock cylinders

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 153.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

CAUTION

When washing your vehicle, ensure as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinders.

Cavity protection

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 153.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

This wax protection does not need to be inspected or re-applied.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – risk of fire!

Wheels

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 153.

Wheel rims

Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion, otherwise the rim material will be corroded.

Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.

Light alloy wheels

After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels. Products which cause abrasion must not be used to treat the wheel rims.

CAUTION

Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Underbody protection

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 153.

The underside of your vehicle is protected for life against chemical and mechanical influences.

It is not possible to guarantee that the **protective coating** will not suffer any damage as the vehicle is driven.

We recommend having the protective coating underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances may ignite - risk of fire!

Taking care of the interior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Regular and proper care help to retain the efficiency and **value** of your vehicle.

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always store vehicle care products safely, in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!

CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colourfastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.
- Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel – there is a risk of damage to the dash panel.
- Do not stick any stickers on the inside of the rear windows, the rear side windows and in the vicinity of the heating elements on the windscreen or near the window aerial. These may get damaged.
- Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

Natural leather

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 157.

Leather is a natural material with specific properties, and requires regular cleaning and maintenance.

The leather should be cleaned on a regular basis depending on the amount of wear-and-tear.

Dust and dirt in the pores and folds act as abrasive materials. This leads to severe corrosion and the premature brittleness of the leather surface.

We recommend that you remove dust **regularly and at short intervals** using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a water-dampened cotton or woollen cloth and then dry with a clean, dry cloth » !.

Clean **severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of neutral soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains**, use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather regularly and at suitable intervals using a suitable leather care product.

! CAUTION

- Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams. Otherwise, the leather could become brittle or cracked.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts, jewellery and pendants may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.
- The use of a mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.
- Use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation effect on a regular basis and each time after cleaning. The cream nourishes the leather, allows it to breathe and keeps it supple and also provides moisture. It also creates surface protection.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

i Note

When using the vehicle, minor visible changes may occur to the leather parts of the covers (e.g. wrinkles or creases) as a result of the stress applied to the covers.

Artificial leather, cloths and Alcantara®

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 157.

Artificial leather
Clean artificial leather with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the artificial leather, use a mild soap solution or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Fabric
Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, boot cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and a cleaning agent specifically designed for this purpose to clean the roof trim.

Remove any lumps on the cover fabric and any fabric residue using a brush.

Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove".

Alcantara®
Dust and fine dirt particles in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface.

If you leave your vehicle parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the Alcantara® seat covers from the direct rays of the sun to prevent fading.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

CAUTION

- Do not use any leather cleaners on Alcantara® seat covers.
- For Alcantara® seat covers do not use any solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover, or similar agents.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the fabric from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked outside for long periods of time, cover the fabric to protect it from direct sunlight.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 157.

Electrically heated seats
Do not clean the covers **by moistening**, as this can damage the seat heating system.

Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers.

Seats without seat heating
Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Indented points arising on the fabrics by everyday use, can be removed by brushing against the direction of hair with a damp brush.

Always clean all parts of the covers, so that there are no visible edges. Then allow the seat to dry completely.

CAUTION

- Regularly remove dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - risk of seat deformation.
- Always clean the seats “from seam to seam”.

Seat belts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 157.

The belt webbing must always be kept clean!

Wash dirty seat belts with mild soapy water.

Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.

Dirty belt webbing may impair the correct functioning of the inertia reel.

WARNING

- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (e.g. acids).
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the belt webbing, seat belt connections, inertia reel or lock is detected, the seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- The seat belts must be fully dried before being rolled up.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The correct fuel grades for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 131 on page 160.

WARNING

The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle. We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. in the event of an accident, these canisters can become damaged and fuel may escape – risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage!
- If the vehicle was not purchased in the country where it was intended to be operated, you should check whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the country where the vehicle will be operated. You should also perhaps check whether the manufacturer has recommended a different fuel for operation of the vehicle in the corresponding country. Is this not the case, then you must check whether it is permitted by the manufacturer to operate the vehicle with another fuel type.

Refuelling

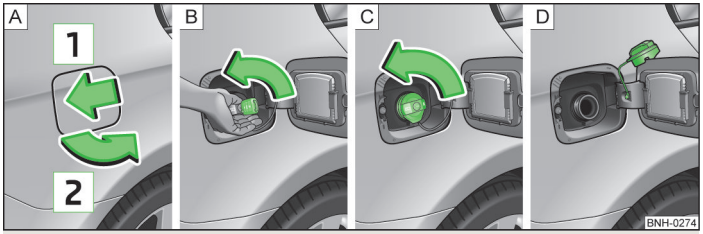

Fig. 131 **Fuel filler**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 160.

Vehicles without lockable fuel filler flap

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 131.
› Open the flap manually in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Hold the filler cap with your hand and unlock by turning the key in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 131 - B.
› Unscrew the filler cap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 131 - C.
› Place the filler cap onto the top of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 131 - D.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler neck as far as it will go.

When the pump nozzle shuts off for the first time, the fuel tank is full » !.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
› Screw in the filler cap in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 131 - B until it audibly clicks into place.
› Hold the filler cap with one hand, lock it by turning in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 131 - D and remove the key.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

Vehicles with lockable fuel filler flap

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 131.
› Open the flap manually in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Unscrew the filler cap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 131 - C.
› Remove the filler cap and place the it into the hole on the fuel filler flap » Fig. 131 - D.

› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler neck as far as it will go.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » !.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
› Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it securely engages » Fig. 131 - C.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

CAUTION

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Do not continue filling the fuel tank otherwise the expansion volume is filled up.

Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **55 litres**, containing a reserve of approx. **7 litres**.

Unleaded petrol

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 160.

Your vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** in compliance with the **EN 228**[1)] standard.

All petrol engines can be operated using petrol that contains at **most** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

Required fuel - unleaded petrol 95/91 or 92 or 93 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON. Unleaded petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92 or 93** RON can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance.

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol min. 95 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON or higher.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92 or 93** RON, if petrol with the octane rating **95** RON is not available » !.

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol 98/(95) RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **98** RON or higher. Unleaded petrol **95** RON can also be used but results in a slight loss in performance.

In case of necessity, you can refuel with petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92 or 93** RON, if unleaded fuel with octane rating **98** RON or **95** RON is not available » !.

Fuel additives
Unleaded petrol in accordance with the EN 228 standard[1)] meets all the conditions for a smooth-running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

CAUTION

- Even filling the tank with leaded petrol that does not meet the standards once can lead to serious damage to parts of the exhaust system!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is used by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur! We recommend that you have the fuel system cleaned by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

- If, in an emergency, the vehicle has to be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane number than the one prescribed, the journey must only be continued at medium engine speeds and a low engine load. Driving at high engine revs or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Engine parts can be damaged if petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used.
- Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

1) In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.

CAUTION

- In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese and iron content. **LRP**(lead replacement petrol) fuels with metallic components may not be used. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!
- Fuels with metallic content may not be used. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!

Note

- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91, 92 or 93** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.
- On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 160.

Your vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** that meets the **EN 590**[1] standard.

All diesel engines can be operated using diesel fuel with at **most** 7% biodiesel **(B7)**[2].

Operation in winter – Winter-grade diesel fuel
In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Diesel fuel additives
Additives, so-called "flow improvers " (petrol and similar agents) should not be mixed with the diesel fuel. This can cause serious damage to engine or exhaust system parts.

CAUTION

- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system!
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used by mistake do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur! We recommend that you have the fuel system cleaned by a specialist garage.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.

CAUTION

- Your vehicle cannot be operated with biofuel **RME**, therefore this fuel must not be refuelled and driven. The use of biofuel **RME** can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Do not mix any fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents) into the diesel. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

[1] In Germany also DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590:2004.
[2] In Germany according to the DIN 52638 standard, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

WARNING

Injuries or scolding or risks of accident or fire may occur when working in the engine compartment. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions outlined below and with the general applicable safety rules. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

WARNING

The following instructions must be followed before starting work in the engine compartment.
- Turn off the engine and withdraw the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a manual gearbox, move the gearshift lever into Neutral, or if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox, move the selector lever into position **P**.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until no more steam or coolant is escaping.

WARNING

The following instructions must be followed when working in the engine compartment.
- Keep children clear of the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!
- The coolant additive and thus all of the coolant is harmful to your health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.

WARNING (Continued)

- Always store the coolant additive securely in its original container, and in particular out of the reach of children – risk of poisoning!
- If coolant is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on the hot engine. Such fluids (e.g. the antifreeze contained in the coolant) may ignite!

WARNING

The following warning instructions must be observed at all times when working in the engine compartment while the engine is running.
- Pay particular attention to rotating engine parts (e.g. V-ribbed belt, generator, radiator fan) and the high-voltage ignition system – risk to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system – particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – risk to life! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

WARNING

The following warning instructions must be observed if work has to be carried out on the fuel or electrical systems.
- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

WARNING

- Read and observe the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep fluids in their original containers and keep securely out of the reach of children!

WARNING (Continued)

- If you intend to work underneath the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks; the car jack is not sufficient – risk of injury!
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a cover) – risk of fire!
- The bonnet must always be properly closed when driving. Therefore, the lock must always be checked after closing the bonnet in order to ensure that it has engaged properly.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!

For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the special tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage.

Note

- Please consult a specialist garage for any questions relating to fluids.
- Fluids with the correct specifications can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Opening and closing the bonnet

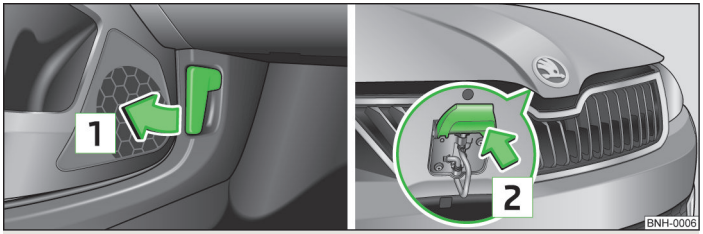

Fig. 132 **Bonnet release lever/release lever**

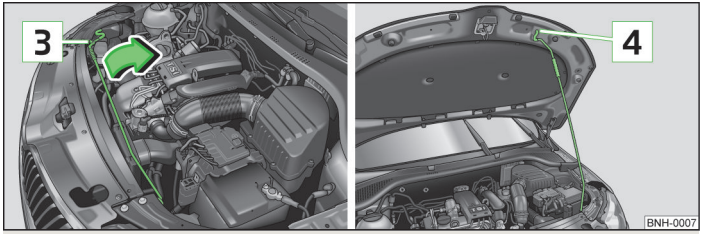

Fig. 133 **Securing the bonnet**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 162.

Opening

› Open the corresponding front door.
› Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 132.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen otherwise the paintwork could be damaged.

› Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 132 to unlock the bonnet.
› Grab hold of the bonnet and lift.

› Take the bonnet support out of its holder 3 » Fig. 133 in the direction of the arrow and secure the opened bonnet by inserting the end of the support into the opening 4.

Closing

› Lift the bonnet slightly and unhook the bonnet support. Insert the bonnet support into the designated holder 3 » Fig. 133.
› Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier lock from a height of around 20 cm – do **not push it in**.

WARNING

Check that the bonnet is closed properly.

CAUTION

Never open the bonnet using the release lever » Fig. 132.

Engine compartment overview

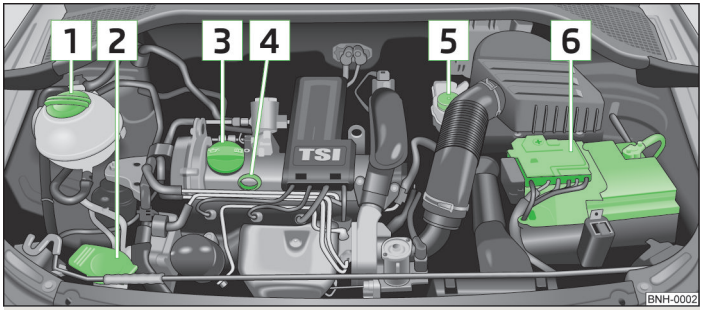

Fig. 134 **Principle sketch: Engine compartment**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 162.

1 Coolant expansion reservoir ____ 169
2 Windscreen washer fluid reservoir ____ 165
3 Engine oil filler opening ____ 168
4 Engine oil dipstick ____ 167
5 Brake fluid reservoir ____ 170
6 Vehicle battery ____ 171

Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 162.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

WARNING

After switching off the ignition, the fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Windscreen washer system

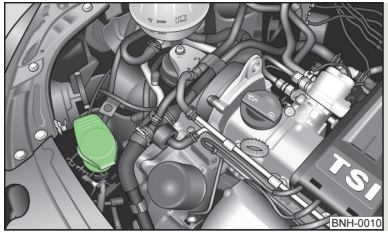

Fig. 135
Engine compartment: Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 162.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment and contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen or rear window and for the headlights.

The **filling level** of the container is about 3.5 litres and about 5.4 litres on vehicles that have a headlight washing system[1].

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean water together with a screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories **(with antifreeze in winter)**, which will remove any stubborn dirt.

In Winter, the washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when refilling, as this may cause contamination of the liquid transportation system, leading in turn to a windscreen washer system malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be use throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that the oil change be completed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The oil capacities include oil filter change. Check the oil level when filling; do not over fill. The oil level must be between the markings » page 167.

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 162.
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil STOP! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the oil level is above level A » Fig. 136 on page 167, STOP do not continue to drive! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil – risk of serious damage to the engine parts!

Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If your skin has come into contact with oil, it must be washed thoroughly.

[1] In some countries, 5.4 l. applies for both variants.

Specifications and capacity

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 166.

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with flexible service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Filling level
1.2 l/55 kW	VW 503 00, VW 504 00	2.8
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	VW 504 00	3.9
1.2 l/77 kW TSI	VW 504 00	3.9
1.4 l/90 kW TSI	VW 503 00, VW 504 00	3.6

Diesel engine[a)]	Specification	Filling level
1.6 l/66, 77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00	4.3

[a)] Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without a DPF**.

Specifications and capacity (in l) for vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification	Filling level
1.2 l/55 kW	VW 501 01, VW 502 00	2.8
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	VW 502 00	3.9
1.2 l/77 kW TSI	VW 502 00	3.9
1.4 l/90 kW TSI	VW 501 01, VW 502 00	3.6
1.6 l/77 kW	VW 501 01, VW 502 00	3.6

If the oils specified above are not available, oils according to ACEA A2 or ACEA A3 can be used once for refilling.

Diesel engine[a)]	Specification	Filling level
1.6 l/66, 77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00	4.3

[a)] Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without a DPF**.

If the oils specified above are not available, oils according to ACEA B3 or ACEA B4 can be used once for refilling.

CAUTION

Only the above-mentioned oils can be used on vehicles with flexible service intervals. We recommend always refilling with oil of the same specification since this will maintain the properties of the oil. In exceptional cases, a maximum of 0.5 l of specification VW 502 00 (only for petrol engines) or specification VW 505 01 (only for diesel engines) engine oil can be used to refill once. Other engine oils must not be used - risk of engine damage!

Checking the oil level

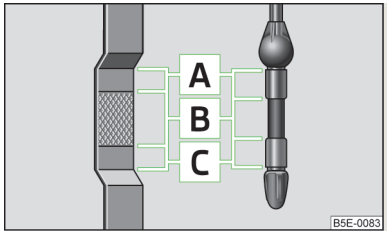

Fig. 136
Dipstick

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 166.

The dipstick indicates the engine oil level » Fig. 136.

Checking the oil level
Ensure that the vehicle is positioned on a level surface and the engine has reached its operating temperature.

› Switch off the engine.

Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.

› Open the bonnet.
› Pull out the dipstick.
› Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
› Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.

Oil level within range A
No oil must be refilled.

Oil level within range B
Oil **can** be refilled. Afterwards, the oil level can lie in the range A.

Oil level within range C
The engine **must** be topped up with oil so that the oil level at least reaches the range B.

The engine consumes a little oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/ 1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 kilometres.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals. We recommend after each time you refuel or prior to making a long journey.

We recommend maintaining the oil level within the range A, **but not above**, if the engine has been operating at high loads, for example, during a lengthy motorway trip during the summer months, towing a trailer or negotiating a high mountain pass.

If the oil level is too low, this will be indicated by an indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 16, *Engine Oil*. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

CAUTION

The oil level must not exceed level A » Fig. 136 - risk of damaging the exhaust system!

Replenishing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 166.

› Check the oil level » page 167.
› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 134 on page 165.
› Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 167.
› Check the oil level » page 167.
› Carefully screw on the oil filler opening cap and push the dipstick in fully.

Changing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 166.

The engine oil must be changed according to prescribed service intervals » page 147 or according to the service interval display » page 28, *Service interval display*.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The coolant consists of water with coolant additive. This mixture guarantees antifreeze protection, protects the cooling/heater system against corrosion and prevents lime formation.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **mild climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -25 °C. In these countries, the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 40%.

Vehicles exported to countries with a **cold climate** are already factory-filled with a coolant which offers antifreeze protection down to about -35 °C. In these countries, the concentration of coolant additive should be at least 50%.

If a higher concentration of antifreeze is required for climatic reasons, the concentration of coolant additive can be increased up to a maximum of 60% (antifreeze protection down to approx. -40 °C).

When refilling, only use antifreeze with the name specified on the coolant expansion tank » Fig. 137 on page 169.

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 162.
- Do not continue your journey if for some reason it is not possible to fill with coolant under the current circumstances. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

- The concentration of coolant additive in the coolant must never be under 40%.
- Over 60% of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and cooling effect.
- A coolant additive that does not comply with the correct specifications can significantly reduce the corrosion protection.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage!
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 137 on page 169.
- If a fault causes the engine to overheat, we recommend visiting a specialist garage, as otherwise serious engine damage may occur.

Capacity

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 168.

Coolant capacity (in litres)

Petrol engines	Filling level
1.2 l/55 kW	4.2
1.2 l/63, 77 kW TSI	7.0
1.4 l/90 kW TSI	7.0
1.6 l/77 kW	4.5

Diesel engine	Filling level
1.6 l/66, 77 kW TDI CR	6.5

Checking the coolant level

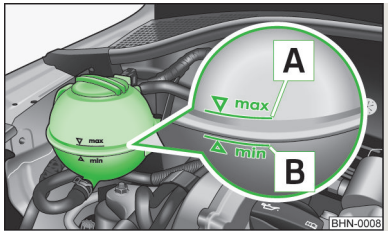

Fig. 137
Engine compartment: Coolant expansion reservoir

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 168.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

Inspecting the coolant level
› Switch off the engine.
› Open the bonnet.
› Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank » Fig. 137.

Coolant level above mark A
No coolant may be added.

The level may also rise slightly above the A marking when the engine is hot.

Coolant level between markings A and B
Coolant **may** be added.

The coolant level must lie between the A and B markings when the engine is cold.

Coolant level below mark B
Coolant **must** be added.

Top up the coolant level to between the A and B markings when the engine is cold.

If the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank is too low, this is indicated by the indicator light » page 16, *Coolant* lighting up in the instrument cluster. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant
A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

Replenishing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 168.

Only top up with new coolant.

› Switch off the engine.
› Allow the engine to cool.
› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
› Replenish the coolant.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available in an emergency. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 162.
- If the fluid level has dropped below the MIN marking » Fig. 138 on page 170, do not continue your journey - risk of accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

i Note

The brake fluid is changed as part of a compulsory inspection service.

Checking the brake fluid level

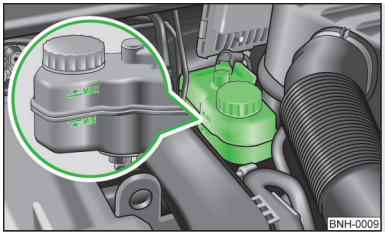

Fig. 138
Engine compartment: Brake fluid reservoir

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 170.

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

› Switch off the engine.
› Open the bonnet.
› Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » Fig. 138.

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this is indicated by the indicator light (!) » page 15, (!) *Brake system* lighting up in the instrument cluster.

Changing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 170.

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. Over time it therefore absorbs moisture from the environment.

Excessive water in the brake fluid may be the cause of corrosion in the brake system.

The water content lowers the boiling point of the brake fluid.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications:
› VW 50114;
› FMVSS 116 DOT4.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

! WARNING

There is risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when working on the battery and on the electrical system. It is essential to comply with the general applicable safety rules as well as the warning instructions outlined below.
- Keep children away from the vehicle battery.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect your eyes by wearing safety goggles or a face shield – risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and, if it comes into contact with the skin, causes deep wounds that take a long time to heal. Repeated contact with diluted acids causes skin diseases (inflammations, ulcers, slin cracks).
- If any battery acid comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the affected eye immediately with clean water for several minutes and consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water. If you swallow battery acid, consult a doctor immediately!

WARNING

- It is prohibited to work with naked flames or lights.
- It is prohibited to smoke or carry out any activities that produce sparks.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery – risk of explosion and chemical burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels – risk of explosion and chemical burns.

WARNING

- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with a metal object or cable) creates a short circuit - risk of melting the lead bars, and risk of explosion, battery fire and acid splashes.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical components and disconnect the negative terminal (-) on the battery.

CAUTION

Improper handling of the battery can lead to damage. We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

- The vehicle battery must only be disconnected if the ignition is switched off, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system (electronic components) can be damaged. When disconnecting the battery from the electrical system, first of all disconnect the negative terminal (-) of the battery, followed by the positive terminal (+).
- When connecting the battery to the electrical system, first of all connect the positive terminal (+) of the battery, followed by the negative terminal (-). Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly – risk of a cable fire.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. This is because certain electrical components consume electricity (e. g. control units) also in idle state. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal (-) or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
- If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Opening the cover

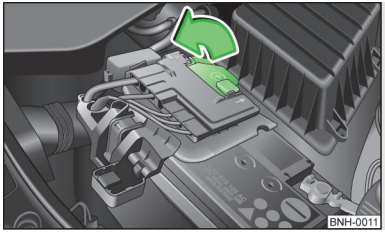

Fig. 139
Vehicle battery: Open up the cover

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 171.

The battery is located in the engine compartment.

› Open the battery cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 139.

The installation of the battery cover on the positive terminal side takes place in the reverse order.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

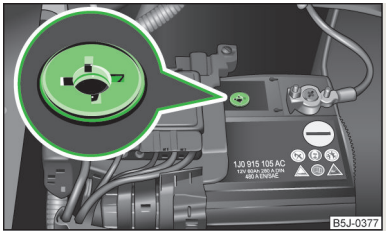

Fig. 140
Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 171.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator, the so-called magic eye » Fig. 140, the electrolyte level can be determined by looking at the change in colour.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.
› Black colour – electrolyte level is correct.
› Colourless or light yellow colour – electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for the recurring engine start.

We recommend that you have the acid level checked regularly by a specialist garage, especially in the following cases.
› High external temperatures.
› Longer day trips.
› After each charge.

Winter time
The vehicle battery only has a proportion of the starting power in lower temperatures. **A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C**.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.

CAUTION

For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.

Note

The battery acid level is also checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.

Charging

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 171.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

› Switch off the ignition and all of the electrical components.
› Only when performing a "quick-charge", disconnect both battery cables (first "negative", then "positive").
› Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
› Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
› After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
› Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
› Reconnect the cables to the battery (first "positive", then "negative").

It is not necessary to disconnect the cables of the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery using low amperages (for example from a mini-charger). **Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer**.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

It is necessary to disconnect both cables before charging the battery with high amperages, known as "**rapid charging**".

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

WARNING

"Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.

CAUTION

On vehicles with the START/STOP system, the pole terminal of the charger must not be connected directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » page 191, *Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system*.

Note

We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be rapid charged by a specialist garage.

Replacing

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 171.

When replacing a battery, the new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, amperage and be the same size. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend having the battery replaced by a specialist garage, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

Disconnecting and reconnecting

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 171.

On disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery, the following functions are initially deactivated or are no longer able to operate fault-free:

Operation	Operating measure
Enter the radio/navigation system code number	» *User manual of the radio* or » *user manual of the navigation system*
Setting the clock	» page 13
Data in the multifunction display are deleted.	» page 25

Note

We recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist garage in order to ensure full functionality of all electrical systems.

Automatic load deactivation

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 171.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is put under high levels of strain. This manifests itself by the following.

› The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.
› Where necessary, large convenience consumers such as seat heaters and rear window heaters have their power limited or are shut off completely in the event of an emergency.

CAUTION

▪ Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
▪ Consumers that are supplied via a 12-V power socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

Note

Driving comfort is not impaired by consumers being deactivated. The driver is often not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and wheel rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- The national legal regulations must be observed for the use of tyres.
- Observe the national legal regulations relating to the use of snow chains and the maximum vehicle speed with snow chains.

WARNING

The following instructions for the use of tyres must be observed.
- For the first 500 km, new tyres do not yet provide optimum grip, and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving – risk of accident!
- Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on all four wheels.
- For reasons of driving safety, do not replace tyres individually.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** for fitted tyres – risk of accident!
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **speed** for fitted tyres – risk of accident!
- Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling – risk of accident!

WARNING (Continued)

- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.
- Only use tyres or wheel rims that have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle. Failure to observe this instruction may impair the road safety of your vehicle – risk of accident!

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding tyre damage and wear.
- Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.
- Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident!
- Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.
- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres impair necessary adhesion to the road surface, particularly at high speeds on wet roads. This could lead to "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled vehicle movement – "swimming" on a wet road surface).

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the tyre inflation pressure.
- The tyre control display does not absolve the driver of the responsibility to ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure. Check the tyre inflation pressure at regular intervals.
- Insufficient or excessive inflation pressure impairs handling – risk of accident!
- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will cause a significant increase in the temperature of the tyre, especially at higher speeds. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blowout.

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the wheel bolts.
- The wheel bolts must be clean and must turn easily. Never apply grease or oil.
- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to an insufficient tightening torque, the rims may come loose when the car is moving – risk of accident! A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
- If the wheel bolts are handled incorrectly, the wheel may come loose when the car is moving – risk of accident!

WARNING

Observe the following information regarding the spare wheel.
- Only use the spare wheel for as long as is necessary.
- Never drive with more than one spare wheel attached.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the spare wheel.

CAUTION

- If a spare wheel is used that is not identical to the fitted tyres, the following must be observed » page 179, *Spare wheel*.
- Protect the tyres from contact with oil, grease and fuel.
- Replace lost valve caps.
- If, in the event of a puncture, it is necessary to fit a spare wheel with a tyre without a dedicated running direction or with the opposite direction of rotation, drive carefully as the optimal characteristics of the tyre are no longer applicable in this situation.

For the sake of the environment

Tyres that are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Service life of tyres

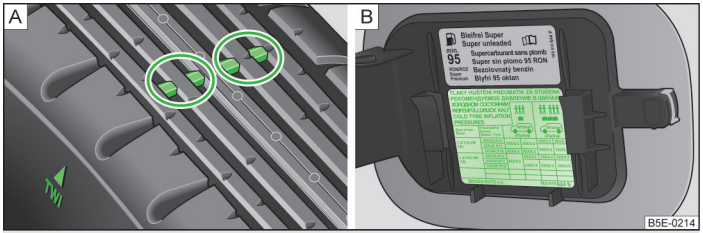

Fig. 141 **Principle sketch: Tyre tread with wear indicators/open fuel filler flap with a table detailing the tyre sizes and tyre inflation pressures**

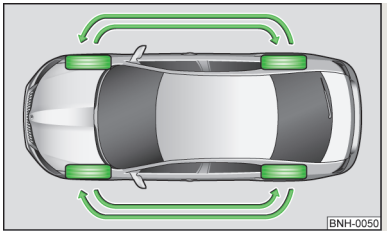

Fig. 142
Replacing wheels

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 175.

The service life of tyres depends on the inflation pressure, driving style and other circumstances. Following the advice below can extend the service life of your tyres.

Tyre pressure
Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

The tyre pressures for **tyres** are shown on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 141 - B.

The tyre pressure should be at the highest pressure specified for your vehicle at all times.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

With greater additional load, adjust the tyre inflation pressure accordingly.

Driving style
Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

Balancing wheels
The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, however, there are a range of factors that may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by a "vibration" in the steering.

Have the wheels rebalanced after replacing the tyres.

Wheel alignment errors
Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear of the tyres.

Tyre damage
Drive over kerbs and other such obstacles slowly and at right angles wherever possible in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre tread immediately.

Replacing wheels
If significantly greater wear is present on the front tyres, we recommend replacing the front wheels with the rear wheels as shown in the diagram » Fig. 142 . You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

We recommend that you swap the tyres every 10,000 km in order to achieve even wear on all tyres and to ensure optimal service life for the tyres.

Storing tyres
Identify disassembled tyres so that the previous direction of rotation can be maintained if the tyres are reassembled.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry place that is as dark as possible. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Wear indicators
The base of the tread of the tyres has 1.6 mm high wear indicators installed. These wear indicators are evenly spaced around the circumference of the tyre, depending on the make » Fig. 141 - A. Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Tyre age
Tyres age and lose their original characteristics, even if they are not being used. Therefore, we recommend not using summer or winter tyres older than 6 or 4 years old respectively.

New tyres

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 175.

Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

The tyre/wheel combinations which are approved for your vehicle are indicated in your vehicle documents.

Where possible, replace tyres by axle. Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

Explanation of tyre markings
195/55 R 15 85 H

What this means is:

195	Tyre width in mm » Fig. 141 on page 176 - B
65	Height/width ratio in % » Fig. 141 on page 176 - B
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial » Fig. 141 on page 176 - B
15	Rim diameter in inches » Fig. 141 on page 176 - B
85	Load index » !
H	Speed symbol » !

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the **inside**). e.g.

DOT ... 10 13 ..

means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 10th week of 2013.

Load index

This indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

83 487 kg
84 500 kg
85 515 kg
86 530 kg

87 545 kg
91 615 kg
92 630 kg
93 650 kg
95 690 kg

Speed symbol

This indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with fitted tyres in each category.

R 170 km/h
S 180 km/h
T 190 km/h
U 200 km/h
H 210 km/h
V 240 km/h
W 270 km/h

CAUTION

The information about the load index and the speed symbol is listed in your vehicle documents.

Unidirectional tyres

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 175.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to ensure the optimal characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics mainly relate to the following:
› Increased driving stability.
› Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
› Reduced tyre noise and tyre wear.

Tyre pressure monitor

Fig. 143
Button for setting the tyre inflation pressure control value

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 175.

System settings

After changing the tyre inflation pressure, after changing one or several wheels or changing the position of a wheel on the vehicle (e.g. replacing the wheels between the axles) or if the indicator light illuminates while driving, a **system configuration** must be carried out as follows.

› Inflate all of the tyres to the specified inflation pressure » page 176.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the symbol button SET » Fig. 143 for longer than 2 seconds.

If the warning light (!) lights up and does not go out after the system configuration, this indicates a system fault.

If the warning light flashes (!), there is a system fault.

Tyre pressure indicator

The warning light (!) lights up in any of the following cases.
› The tyre inflation pressure is low.
› The structure of the tyre is damaged.
› The vehicle is loaded on one side.
› The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
› Snow chains are mounted.
› The spare wheel is mounted.
› One wheel per axle was changed.

WARNING

- When the warning light (!) illuminates, immediately reduce the speed and avoid sudden steering and brake manoeuvres. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and inspect the tyres and their inflation pressure.
- Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light (!) may light up after a delay, or not at all.

CAUTION

- The tyre control display does therefore not replace the regular tyre inflation pressure control, as the system cannot detect an even loss of pressure.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage. In this case carefully bring the vehicle to a standstill without sudden steering movements or sharp braking.
- To ensure a proper functioning of the tyre control display, it is necessary to repeat the basic setting every 10,000 km or once a year.

Spare wheel

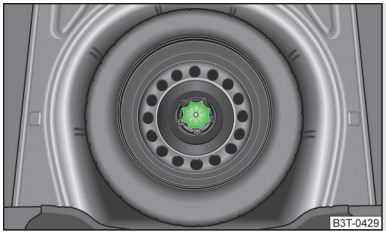

Fig. 144
Boot: Spare wheel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 175.

The spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a special bolt » Fig. 144.

Take out the wheel
› Open the boot lid.
› Lift up the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Remove the box with the tool kit.
› Unscrew the bolt » Fig. 144 in an anti-clockwise direction.
› Take out the wheel.

Stow the wheel
› Stow the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well with the rim facing down.
› Screw in the bolt » Fig. 144 in a clockwise direction until the wheel is securely attached.
› Place the box with the tool kit back into the spare wheel and secure it with the tape.
› Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Close the boot lid.

Fit a wheel in the appropriate dimensions and design as soon as possible.

If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted » !.

Temporary spare wheel
A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.
› The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
› Be particularly observant when driving.
› The inflation pressure for the temporary spare wheel is identical to the maximum inflation pressure for the standard tyres.
› Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, as it is not intended for long-term use.

WARNING

- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the fitted tyres, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

CAUTION

Observe the instructions on the warning sign of the temporary spare wheel.

Full wheel trim

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 175.

Extracting

› Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

! CAUTION

▪ Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the full wheel trim. Avoid heavy impacts when the trim has not yet been inserted into the wheel rim. This could cause damage to the guide and centring elements of the trim.
▪ When using the anti-theft wheel bolt, ensure that it is in the hole in the valve area » page 186, *Securing wheels against theft*.
▪ If **wheel trims** are retrofitted it must be ensured that an adequate flow of air is assured to cool the brake system.

Wheel bolts

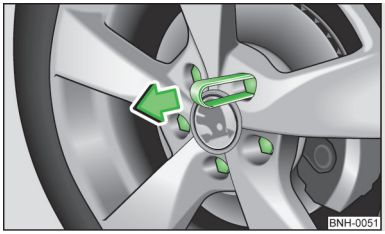

Fig. 145
Remove the cap

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 175.

Extracting

› Push the extraction pliers » page 183 sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap » Fig. 145.
› Remove the cap.

Installing

› Push the caps onto the wheel bolts up to the stop.

The wheel bolt caps are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel.

Wheel bolts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 175.

Wheels and **wheel bolts** are matched to each other in terms of design. Each time you fit other wheels rims, e.g. light alloy wheel rims or wheels with winter tyres, you must also use the matching wheel bolts with the correct length and dome shape. This is a prerequisite for ensuring that wheels are attached correctly.

Winter operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 180.

Fitting winter tyres will significantly improve the handling of your vehicle when driving in wintry road conditions. Summer tyres have less grip on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C. This is especially true of vehicles fitted with **wide tyres** or **high-speed tyres**.

In order to achieve the best possible handling properties, winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels, the minimum tread depth must be 4 mm and tyres must be no older than 4 years.

Winter tyres of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

The speed limit for winter tyres can be set in the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Winter tyres** » page 28.

For the sake of the environment

Fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C. The fuel consumption is also lower.

Snow chains

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 180.

When driving in wintry road conditions, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth (D)	Tyre size
5J x 14[a)]	35 mm	175/70
6J x 15[b)]	38 mm	185/60
6J x 15[b)]	38 mm	195/55

[a)] Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than **9 mm**.
[b)] Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than **13 mm**.

CAUTION

- The chains must be removed when driving on roads which are free of snow. They adversely affect the handling of your vehicle, damage the tyres and are rapidly destroyed.
- Remove the **full wheel trims** before installing the snow chains.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

First aid kit and warning triangle

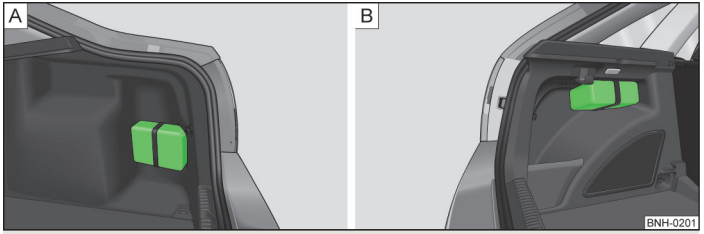

Fig. 146 **Placing of the first-aid kit: Rapid / Rapid Spaceback**

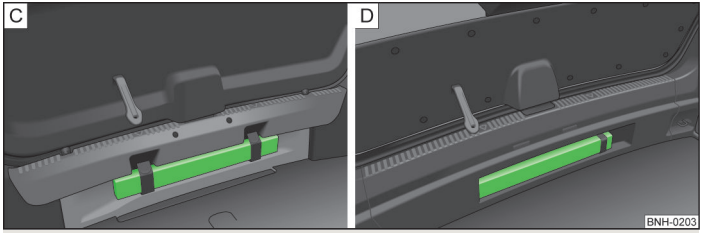

Fig. 147 **Placing of the warning triangle: Rapid / Rapid Spaceback**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 182.

First-aid box

The first-aid box can be fastened to the right-hand side of the boot» Fig. 146 - A or the left-hand side of the boot» Fig. 146 - Busing a tensioning strap.

Warning triangle

The warning triangle can be attached to the casing of the rear panel using rubber bands » Fig. 147 - C or inserted into the casing of the rear wall and secured with a rubber band » Fig. 147 - D.

WARNING

The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid kit from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are available from a ŠKODA Partner.

fire extinguisher

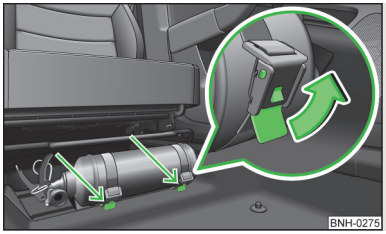

Fig. 148
Fire extinguisher

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 182.

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a holder underneath the driver's seat.

Removing/attaching

› Loosen the two straps by pulling the buckles in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 148.
› Remove the fire extinguisher.

Follow these steps in the reverse order for attachment.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person once a year. The national legal requirements must be observed.

WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with national legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. Proper functioning of the fire extinguisher is not assured once it has passed its expiry date.
- The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Vehicle tool kit

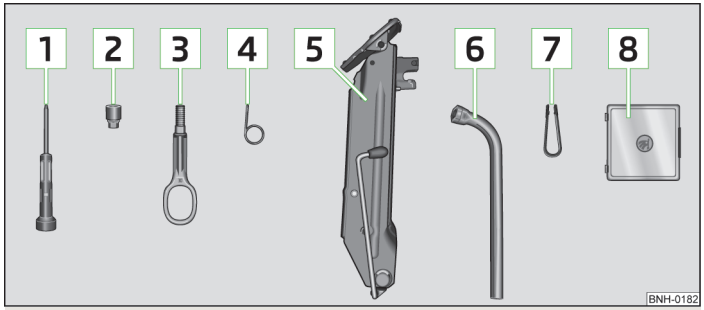

Fig. 149 **Vehicle tool kit**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 182.

The vehicle tool kit and the lifting jack are housed in a plastic box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel. There is also space here for the removable ball rod for the trailer towing device. The box is attached with a strap on the spare wheel.

The components of the vehicle tool kit (depending on vehicle equipment) » Fig. 149.

1 Screwdriver
2 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
3 Towing eye
4 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
5 Car jack
6 Wheel wrench
7 Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
8 Replacement bulb set

Screw the car jack back into its initial position after use in order to store it back in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

- The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances use it to lift heavier vehicles or other loads – risk of injury!
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the boot.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

- If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
- Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
- The following instructions must be followed if the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres or rims that differ from the factory-fitted ones » page 177, *New tyres*.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions for lifting the vehicle.
- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised – risk of injury.

CAUTION

- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is **120 Nm**.
- If the wheel bolts are fastened too tightly, this can cause damage to the anti-theft wheel bolt or the adapter.

Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

Preliminary work

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 184.

Always change a wheel on a level surface as far as possible.

The following steps must be carried out before actually changing the wheel:

› Have **all of the occupants get out of the vehicle.** While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (they should instead remain behind a crash barrier).

› Switch off the engine.
› Move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever for the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
› Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
› Uncouple any trailers.
› Remove the **vehicle tool kit** » page 183 and the **spare wheel** » page 179 from the boot.

Changing a wheel

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 184.

› Remove the full wheel trim » page 180 or caps » page 180.
› First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts » page 185.
› Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground » page 186.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Alternately tighten wheel bolts opposite (diagonally) with the wheel wrench. Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last » page 185.
› Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

Note

▪ All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
▪ Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!
▪ When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 178.

Follow-up work

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 184.

The following steps must also be performed after changing the wheel.

[1] Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 186.

› Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using a special bolt » page 179, *Spare wheel*.
› Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the band.
› **Check** the **tyre pressure** on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.
› Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.
› Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Note

▪ If it is determined that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn when changing the wheel, the bolts must be replaced before checking the tightening torque.
▪ Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts

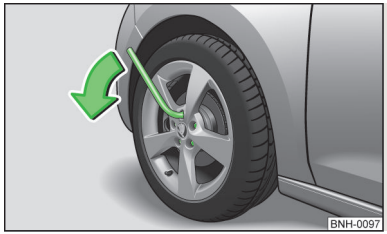

Fig. 150
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 184.

Release
› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop[1].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 150.

Tightening
› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop[1].

› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 150 until it is tight.

WARNING

Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) provided that the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could come off and fall down – risk of injury!

Note

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foodt**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

Raising the vehicle

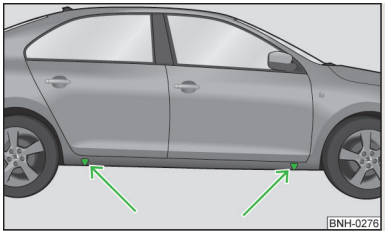

Fig. 151
Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

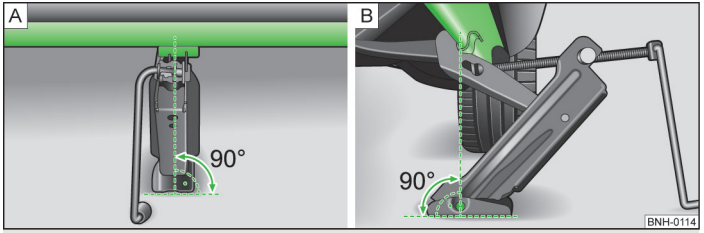

Fig. 152 **Attach lifting jack**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 184.

Position the lifting jack below the jacking point closest to the faulty wheel » Fig. 151. The jacking point is located directly below the engraving in the lower sill.

› Position the lifting jack below the jacking point with the crank and move it up until its claw is positioned below the vertical web of the lower sill.
› Align the lifting jack so that its claw grasps the web » Fig. 152 - B.
› Support the base plate of the lifting jack with its entire surface resting on level ground and ensure that the lever is positioned vertically to the point at which the claw grasps the web » Fig. 152 - A.
› Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

WARNING

- Only raise the vehicle at the attachment points.
- Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.

Securing wheels against theft

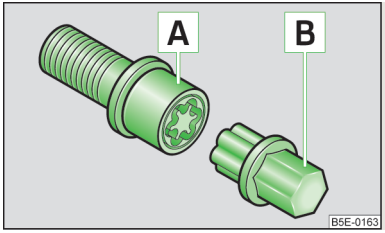

Fig. 153
Principle sketch: Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 184.

The anti-theft wheel bolts can only be removed/tightened with the aid of the adapter » page 183.

› Remove the cover from the anti-theft wheel bolt.
› Insert the adapter B » Fig. 153 with its toothed side fully into the inner toothing of the anti-theft wheel bolt A until the stop so that only the outer hexagon is jutting out.

› Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter B up to the stop.
› Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt » page 185.
› After removing the adapter, replace the cap on the anti-theft wheel bolt.
› Have the **tightening torque checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

Note

▪ Make a note of the code number hammered into the rear side of the adapter or the rear side of the anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from ŠKODA Genuine Parts if required.
▪ We recommend that you always carry the adapter for the wheel bolts with you in the vehicle. It should be stowed in the vehicle tool kit.
▪ The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Tyre repair

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

A repair made using the breakdown kit is **never intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The wheel must not be removed during repair.

Do not remove foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre.

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.
› There is damage to the rim.
› The outside temperature is less than -20 °C.
› The tears or punctures are greater than 4 mm in size.
› There is damage to the tyre wall.
› Driving with very low tyre pressure or with a completely flat tyre.
› If the use-by-date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

WARNING

▪ A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
▪ Do not travel faster than 80 km/h.
▪ Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
▪ Check the tyre pressure after driving for 10 minutes.
▪ The sealant is hazardous to heath. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.

For the sake of the environment

Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

Note

▪ Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.
▪ A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.
▪ Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Breakdown kit

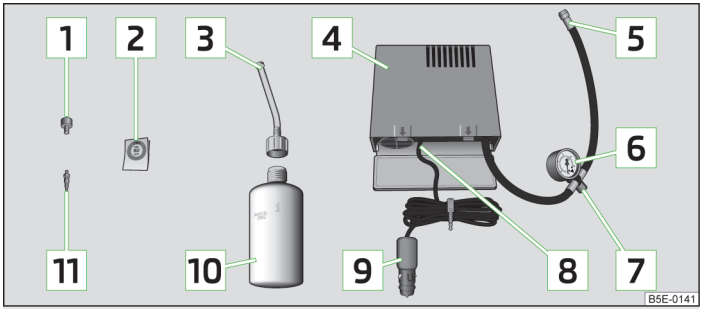

Fig. 154 **Components of the breakdown kit**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 187.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

Components of the breakdown kit » Fig. 154.

1 Valve remover
2 Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph"
3 Inflation hose with plug
4 Air compressor
5 Tyre inflation hose
6 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
7 Air release valve
8 ON and OFF switch
9 12 volt cable connector
10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover 1 has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core. This is the only way in which you can remove and re-install the valve core from the tyre valve. The same also applies to the replacement valve core 11.

Preparations for using the breakdown kit

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 187.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the breakdown kit.

› Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic. Park on as flat and firm a surface as possible.
› If you are in flowing traffic, switch on the hazard warning light system and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance! The national legal requirements must be observed.
› Have **all of the occupants get out of the vehicle.** While changing a tyre, the occupants of the vehicle should not stand on the road (they should instead remain behind a crash barrier).
› Switch off the engine and move the gearshift lever into **Neutral** or move the selector lever on the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
› Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
› Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » page 187.
› Uncouple any trailers.
› Remove the **breakdown kit** from the boot.
› Stick the sticker 2 » Fig. 154 on page 188 onto the dash panel in the driver's line of vision.
› Do not remove the foreign body, e.g. screw or nail, from the tyre.
› Unscrew the valve cap.
› Use the valve remover 1 to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 187.

Sealing

› Forcefully shake the tyre inflater bottle 10 » Fig. 154 on page 188 back and forth several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflator bottle 10 in a clockwise direction. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.

› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the empty tyre inflator bottle from the valve.
› Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover 1.

Inflating

› Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose 5 » Fig. 154 on page 188 firmly onto the tyre valve.
› Check that the air release valve 7 is closed.
› Start the engine and run it in idle.
› Plug the connector 9 into 12 Volt socket » page 60, *12-volt power outlet*.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 8.
› Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 5 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 5 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› If you cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure here either, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› Remove the tyre inflation hose 5 from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes » page 189.

! WARNING

- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated – there is a risk of injury.
- Do not place the hot tyre inflation hose or hot air compressor on flammable materials – there is a risk of fire.
- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. Do not drive the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

! CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest – there is a risk of overheating. Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Check after 10 minutes' driving

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 187.

Check the tyre inflation pressure after driving for 10 minutes!

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› **Do not drive the vehicle!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Adjust the tyre inflation pressure to the correct value (see inside of fuel filler cap).
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

! WARNING

- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not jump start with the battery of another vehicle – there is a risk of explosion.
- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » page 162.

WARNING (Continued)

- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – there is a risk of short circuit.
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – there is a risk of short circuit.
- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- Do not bend over the battery – there is a risk of caustic burns.
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, lit cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – there is a risk of explosion.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels – risk of explosion and chemical burns.

CAUTION

- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the system of the vehicle.
- We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

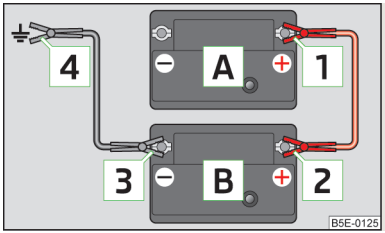

Fig. 155
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 189.

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat. Jump-start cables are required for this purpose.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

› Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery A » Fig. 155 .
› Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power B.
› Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power B.
› Attach the clamp 4 to a solid metal component firmly connected to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

Starting engine

› Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
› Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
› If the engine does not start, halt the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
› Disconnect the cables in exactly the **reverse order** to the one described above.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Observe the instructions of the jumper lead manufacturer.

Positive cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

Jump-starting in vehicles with the START-STOP system

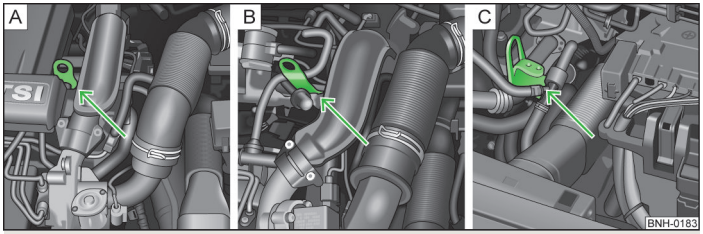

Fig. 156 **Engine earth: START-STOP system**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 189.

On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the jump-start cable of the charger must never be connected directly to the negative pole of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth.

› 1.2 l/63 kW TSI and 1.2 l/77 kW TSI engines » Fig. 156 - A
› 1.4 l/90 kW engine » Fig. 156 - B
› 1.6 l/77 kW TDI CR engine » Fig. 156 - C

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged!

A **tow bar** is the safest way of towing a vehicle and also minimises any shocks. Only use a **tow rope** if a suitable tow bar is not available.

When towing, the following guidelines must be observed.

Driver of the tow vehicle

› Release the clutch particularly gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› On vehicles with a manual transmission, only push down on the accelerator pedal once the rope is taught.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle

› Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn signal lights, horn, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

! CAUTION

- Do not tow start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 189, *Jump-starting*.
- If the gearbox no longer contains any oil because of a defect, your vehicle must only be towed with the driven wheels raised clear of the ground or on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer.
- The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.
- To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.
- While towing, take care to avoid impermissibly high tensile forces or jerky loads. There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.
- Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » page 192 or » page 192 to the **detachable ball head of the towing equipment** » page 119.

Note

- We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Towing another vehicle requires a certain amount of practice. Both drivers should be familiar with the particular points about towing a vehicle. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.
- When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.
- The tow rope must not be twisted as it may in certain circumstances result in the front towing eye being unscrewed out of your vehicle.

Front towing eye

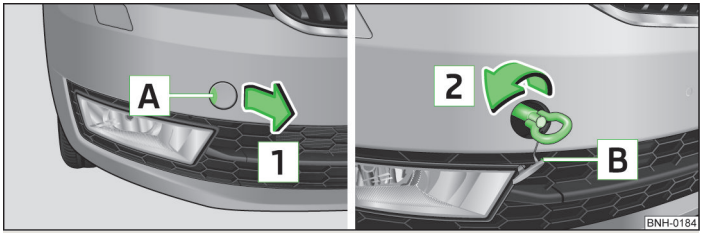

Fig. 157 **Front bumper: Removing the cap/installing the towing eye**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 191.

Removing/installing the cap

› Press on the cap in the area A » Fig. 157.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow 1.
› After unscrewing the towing eye, insert the area B of the cap under the right-hand side of the hole in the front bumper and then press on the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› Manually screw the towing eye as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 157 » !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow 2.

CAUTION

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye

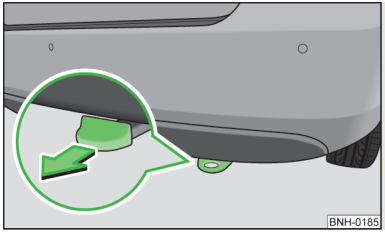

Fig. 158
Rear towing eye

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 191.

The rear towing eye is located below the bumper on the right.

Remove the protective cap before using the towing eye. » Fig. 158. Replace the protective cap after using the towing eye.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 191.

For vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, the pre-installed detachable towbar may be used » page 119, *Towing device*.

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

Note

The detachable ball rod must always be in the vehicle so that it can be used for towing, if necessary.

Remote control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

CAUTION

- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- When replacing the battery, pay attention to the correct polarity.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

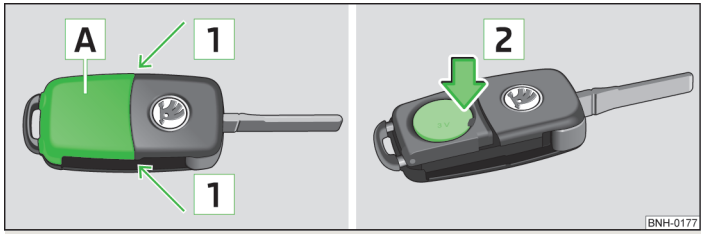

Fig. 159 **Remove cover/take out battery**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 193.

The battery is located under a cover A » Fig. 159.

We recommend having the key batteries replaced by a specialist garage. However, if you would like to replace the discharged battery yourself proceed as follows.

› Flip out the key.
› Press off the battery cover with your thumb or using a flat screwdriver in the region of the arrows 1.
› Remove the discharged battery from the key by pressing the battery down in the region of the arrow 2.
› Insert the new battery.
› Place the battery cover on the key and press it down until it clicks into place.

Note

- The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » page 194.
- If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Synchronising the remote control

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 193.

If the vehicle does not unlock when pressing the remote control, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key was replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Pressing of the button means that the door will unlock with the key within 1 minute.

Emergency unlocking/locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Locking a door

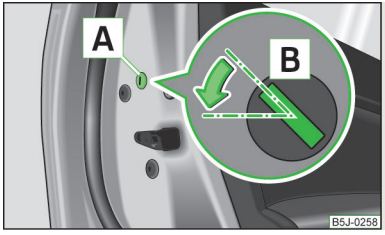

Fig. 160
Left rear door: Emergency locking

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 194.

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder, it is only visible after opening the door.

› Remove the panel A » Fig. 160.
› Insert the key into the slot B and turn it into the horizontal position in the direction of the arrow (mirror-inverted on the right doors).
› Replace the cover.

After closing the door, it cannot be opened from the outside. The door is unlocked by pulling on the door opening lever and is then opened from the outside.

Unlocking the tailgate

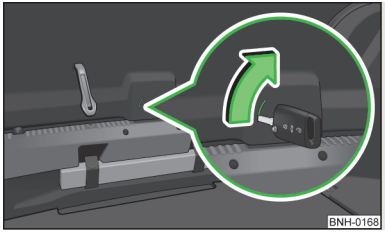

Fig. 161
Emergency unlocking of the boot lid

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 194.

Unlocking

› Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 55.
› Insert the vehicle key into the slot in the trim panel as far as it goes » Fig. 161.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
› Open the boot lid.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

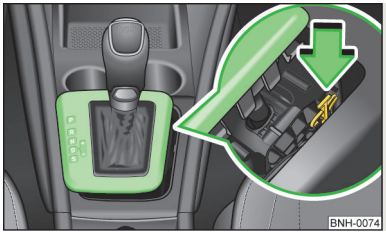

Fig. 162
Selector lever-emergency unlocking

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 194.

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Carefully pull up the front left and right cover.
› Pull up rear cover.
› Press the yellow plastic part in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 162 using your finger.
› At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing the front windscreen wiper blades

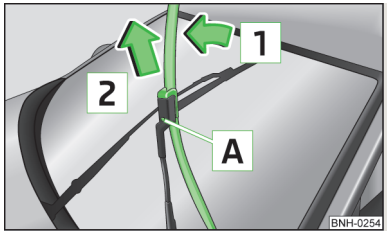

Fig. 163
Windscreen wiper blade

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 195.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Service position for changing wiper blades
› Closing the bonnet.
› Switch the ignition off and on again.
› Press the windscreen wiper lever into position 4 » Fig. 32 on page 49 and the windscreen wiper arms will move into the service position.

Removing the wiper blade
› Raise the windscreen wiper arm from the rear window and slightly tilt the windscreen wiper blade towards the wiper arm, arrow 1 » Fig. 163.
› Hold the windscreen wiper arm at the top end.
› Press the locking button A and remove the wiper blade in the direction of arrow 2.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade
› Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
› Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.
› Switch on the ignition and push the windscreen wiper lever into position 4 » Fig. 32 on page 49; the windscreen wiper arms move to the home position.

Replacing the rear window glass wiper blades

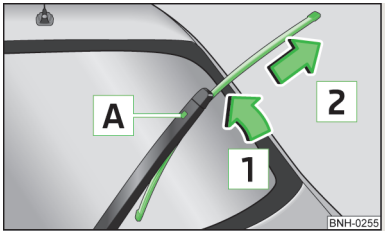

Fig. 164
Rear window wiper blade

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 195.

Removing the wiper blade

› Raise the windscreen wiper arm from the rear window and slightly tilt the windscreen wiper blade towards the wiper arm, arrow 1 » Fig. 164.
› Hold the windscreen wiper arm at the top end.
› Press the locking button A and remove the wiper blade in the direction of arrow 2.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
› Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Switch off the ignition and the corresponding power consuming device before replacing a fuse.

Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 198 or » page 200.

Fuse colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white	25
green	30
orange	40

WARNING

Always read and observe the warning notes before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 162, *Engine compartment*.

CAUTION

- "Never repair" fuses, and do not replace them with fuses of a higher amperage – risk of fire! This may also cause damage at other points in the electrical system.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time, have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage.
- A blown fuses is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.

Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse.
- There can be several consumer devices for one fuse, depending on the vehicle's equipment.
- Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.
- Multiple power consuming devices can share a single fuse.

Fuses in the dash panel

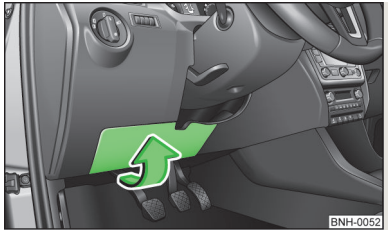

Fig. 165
Underside of the dash panel: Distribution board cover.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 197.

The fuses are located on the bottom left of the dash panel behind a cover.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the cover of the fuse box » Fig. 165 in the direction of the arrow.
› Remove the plastic clip from the holder in the fuse box cover in the dash panel.
› Place the clip on the respective fuse and pull this fuse out.
› Insert a new fuse.

› Reinsert the cover into the dash panel in the opposite direction to the arrow such that the guide pins are guided into the dash panel openings.

Carefully push the cover in.

Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel

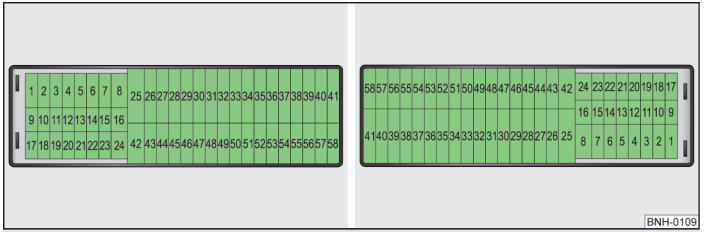

Fig. 166 **Schematic representation of the fuse box for vehicles with left-hand steering/right-hand steering**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 197.

No.	Power consumer
1	S-contact
2	START - STOP
3	Instrument cluster, headlight range adjustment, telephone, oil level sensor, diagnostic port
4	Control unit for ABS/ESC, steering angle sensor strip with switches
5	Petrol engine: Speed regulating system
6	Reversing light (manual gearbox)
7	Ignition, engine control unit, automatic gearbox
8	Brake pedal switch, clutch switch, engine cooling fan
9	Operating controls for the heating, electronic control unit for air conditioning system, park distance control, window lift, engine cooling fan, heated washer nozzles
10	DC-DC converter
11	Mirror adjustment
12	Control unit for trailer detection
13	Electronic control unit for automatic gearbox, selector lever of the automatic gearbox
14	Headlight beam control
15	Not assigned
16	Power steering, speed sensor, engine control unit, control unit for fuel pump
17	Daytime running lights/radio for vehicles with START-STOP
18	Mirror heater
19	Ignition lock input
20	Engine control unit, electronic control unit for fuel pump, fuel pump
21	Reversing lamp (automatic gearbox), fog lights with the function CORNER
22	Operating controls for the heating, electronic control unit for air conditioning system, telephone, instrument cluster, steering angle sender, multi-function steering wheel, ignition key removal lock, diagnostic port
23	Interior lighting, storage compartment and luggage compartment, side lights
24	Central control unit
25	Not assigned
26	Rear window wiper
27	Not assigned
28	Petrol engine: Purge valve, PTC heater
29	Injection, coolant pump
30	Fuel pump, ignition system, cruise control
31	Lambda probe
32	High pressure fuel pump, pressure valve
33	Engine control unit
34	Engine control unit, vacuum pump
35	Switch illumination, number plate light, parking light
36	Main beam
37	Rear fog light, DC-DC converter
38	Fog lights

No.	Power consumer
39	Air blower for heating
40	Not assigned
41	Heated front seats
42	Rear window heater
43	Horn
44	Windscreen wipers
45	Boot lid lock, central locking system
46	Alarm
47	Cigarette lighter, power socket in the luggage compartment
48	ABS
49	Turn signal lights, brake lights
50	DC-DC converter, radio
51	Electric windows (driver's window and rear left window)
52	Electric windows (front passenger's window and rear right)
53	Windscreen washer
54	START-STOP instrument cluster, steering wheel module, multi-function steering wheel
55	Control unit for automatic gearbox
56	Headlight cleaning system
57	Low beam on the left
58	Low beam on the right

Fuses in the engine compartment

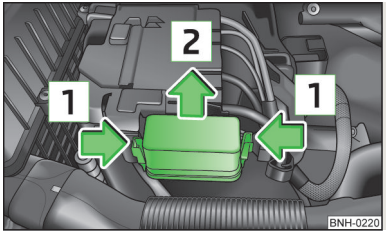

Fig. 167
Vehicle battery: Cover for the fuse box (variant 1)

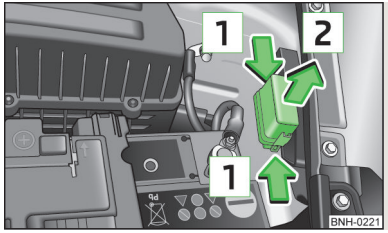

Fig. 168
Vehicle battery: Cover for the fuse box (variant 2)

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 197.

Replacing fuses

› Press the lock buttons on the cover together simultaneously in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 167 or » Fig. 168.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Replace the appropriate fuse.
› Place the cover on top of the fuse box.
› Push in the interlocks on the cover and lock.

The cover must engage firmly.

Fuse assignment in the engine compartment

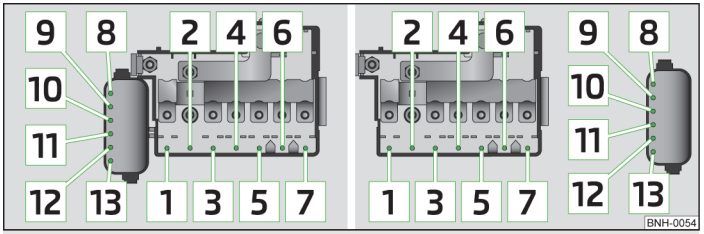

Fig. 169 **Schematic representation of fuse box in engine compartment: Version 1/version 2**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 197.

No.	Power consumer
1	Generator
2	Not assigned (version 1), auxiliary electric heater (version 2)
3	Interior (version 1) » Fig. 169 Power supply for fuse block (version 2) » Fig. 169
4	Auxiliary electric heating (version 1) » Fig. 169 Interior (version 2) » Fig. 169
5	Interior
6	Engine cooling fan, control unit for preheating unit
7	Electrohydraulic power steering
8	ABS
9	Radiator fan
10	Automatic gearbox
11	ABS
12	Central control unit
13	Electrical auxiliary heating system

Note

Fuses 1-7 are replaced by a specialist garage.

Bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

› Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
› Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
› A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the boot.

WARNING

▪ Always read and observe the warning notes before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 162, *Engine compartment*.
▪ Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
▪ H7 and H15 bulbs are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
▪ Gas discharge bulbs (xenon bulbs) operate with a high voltage, professional knowledge is required – risk of death!
▪ The corresponding lamp must always be switched off when replacing a light bulb.

CAUTION

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.
- We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main, low or fog beam.
- Consult a specialist garage in the event of a failure in a xenon gas discharge lamp.

Bulb arrangement in the headlights

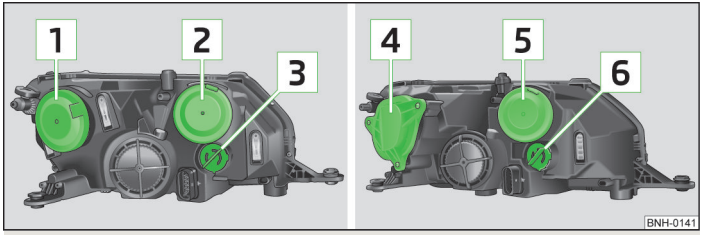

Fig. 170 **Principle sketch: Headlight with halogen bulb/with Xenon bulb**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

Headlight with halogen bulb

1 Low beam
2 Main beam, separate daytime running lights, and parking light
3 Turn signal light (at the front)

Headlights with Xenon light

4 Low beam with Xenon light
5 Main beam, separate daytime running lights, and parking light
6 Turn signal light (at the front)

Replacing the low beam bulb

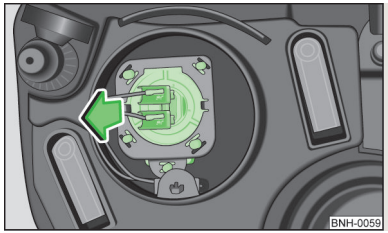

Fig. 171
Headlight with halogen bulb: Bulb for low beam

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

› Remove the rubber cover 1 » Fig. 170 on page 201.
› Remove the connector with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 171.
› Remove the connector.
› Insert a new light bulb in such a way that the fixing lugs of the bulb fit in the recesses of the reflector.
› Attach the connector.
› Insert the rubber cover 1 » Fig. 170 on page 201.

Replacing bulb for main beam, daytime running lights and parking light

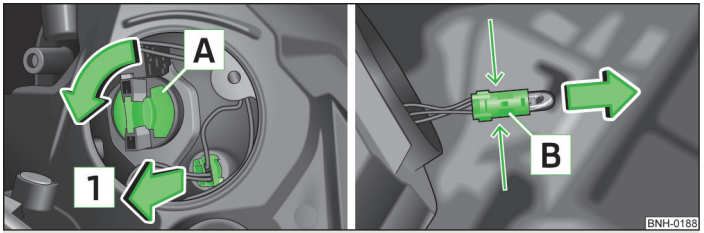

Fig. 172 **Bulbs for main beam, daytime running lights, and parking light**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

Removing/replacing the bulb for main beam and separate daytime running lights

› Remove the rubber cover 2 or 5 » Fig. 170 on page 201.
› Turn the bulb holder A » Fig. 172 as far as it goes in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
› Replace the bulb, insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn in the opposite direction to that of the arrow as far as it goes.
› Insert the rubber cover 2.

Removing/replacing the bulb for the parking light

› Remove the rubber cover 2 or 5 » Fig. 170 on page 201.
› Remove the bulb holder with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 172.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the bulb holder B in the direction of the arrow.
› Insert a new bulb in the bulb holder up to the stop.
› Replace the bulb holder in the headlamp with the bulb.
› Insert the rubber cover 2.

Changing the front turn signal bulb

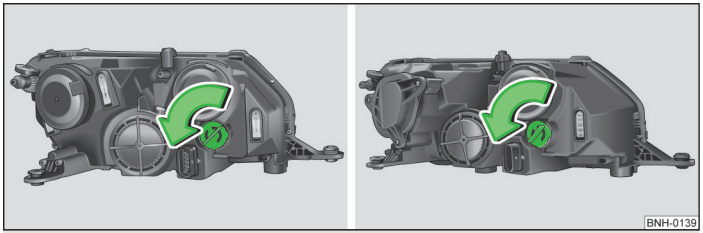

Fig. 173 **Principle sketch: Headlight with halogen bulb/headlight with xenon bulb**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

› Turn the socket with the bulb » Fig. 173 as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow and then remove it.
› Remove the bulb, insert the socket with the new bulb and turn in the opposite direction to that of the arrow to the stop.

Replacing the bulb for the fog light

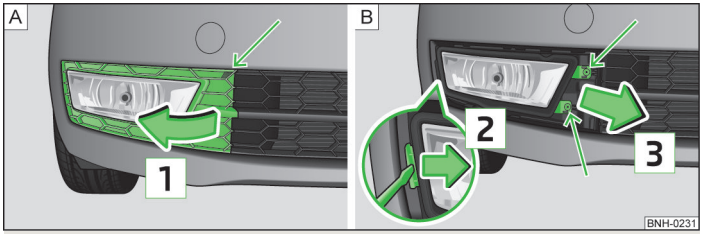

Fig. 174 **Front bumper: Protective grille/removing the fog light**

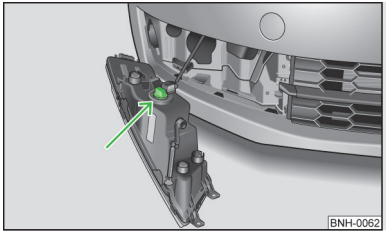

Fig. 175
Replacing the light bulb

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

Removing the protective grille

› Undo the protective grille in the area of the arrow » Fig. 174 - A using the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 183, *Vehicle tool kit*.
› Remove the protective grille in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 174.

Changing light bulbs for fog lights

› Unscrew the screws » Fig. 174 - B marked with the arrows[1)].
› Unlock the fuse in the direction of the arrow 2 with the screwdriver.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the connector » Fig. 175.
› Turn the bulb holder in an **anti-clockwise** direction as far as the stop and then remove it » Fig. 175.
› Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb into the headlight and turn **in** a clockwise direction as far as the stop.
› Attach the connector.
› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 174 and tighten.
› Insert the protective grille and carefully press it in.

The protective grille must engage firmly.

[1)] The screwdriver is part of the tool kit.

Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light

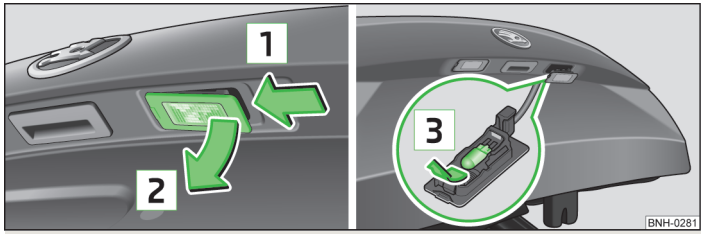

Fig. 176 **Remove the number plate light/replace the bulb**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

› Open the boot lid.
› Push in the lamp in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 176.

The lamp comes loose.

› Swivel out the lamp in the direction of the arrow 2 and remove it.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder.
› Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Push on the light until the spring clicks into place.

Check that the light is securely inserted.

Rear light (Rapid)

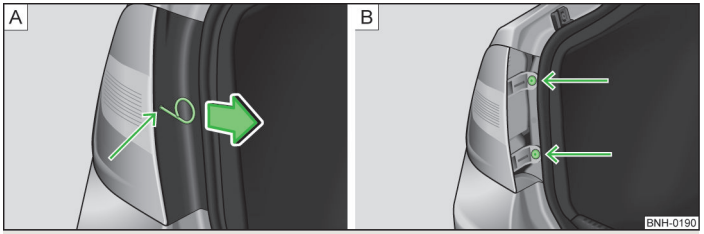

Fig. 177 **Remove cover/light**

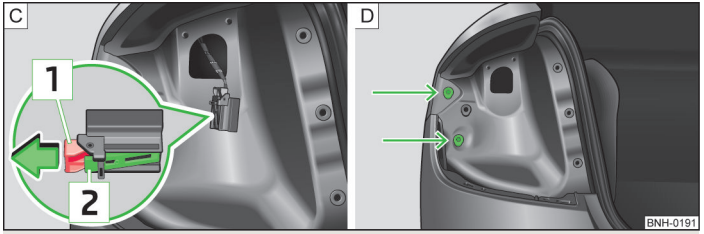

Fig. 178 **Installing the lamp connector/lamp**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

Removing

› Open the boot lid.
› Insert the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 183, *Vehicle tool kit* into the hole at the position indicated by the arrow » Fig. 177 - A.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 177 - A.
› Use the screwdriver from the tool kit to unscrew the lamp » Fig. 177 - B.
› Grip the tail lamp and carefully remove it by jiggling it out in the opposite direction of travel.
› Pull the locking mechanism 1 » Fig. 178 on the connector in the direction of the arrow.
› Press the latching mechanism 2 » Fig. 178 and remove the connector.

Installing

› Insert the connector into the lamp and lock it securely.
› Insert the lamp into the mounts in the body » Fig. 178 - D.
› Carefully press the tail lamp into the body so that the bolts 2 » Fig. 179 on page 204 on the lamp engage into the mounts in the body » !.

Ensure that the cable bundle does not become pinched between the body and the lamp.

› Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover.

The cover must engage securely.

! CAUTION

- Ensure that the cable bundle does not become pinched between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted – risk of damage to the electric installation and risk of water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the cable bundle has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.
- Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing bulbs in rear light (Rapid)

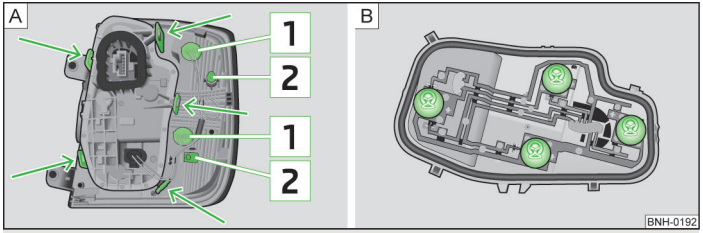

Fig. 179 **Outer part of the lamp/inner part of the lamp**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

Outer part of the lamp

› Turn the bulb holder 1 » Fig. 179 in an **anti-clockwise** direction and remove it from the lamp housing.

› Replace the bulb, reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn to the stop in a **clockwise** direction.

Inner part of the lamp

› Unlock the bulb holder using the locking latches marked with arrows » Fig. 179 - A and remove the bulb holder from the tail lamp.
› Turn the bulb holder to the stop » Fig. 179 - B in an **anti-clockwise** direction and remove it from the lamp housing.
› Replace the bulb, reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn to the stop in a **clockwise** direction.
› Insert the bulb holder in the tail lamp assembly.

All locking mechanisms must audibly snap into place.

Tail lamp (Rapid Spaceback)

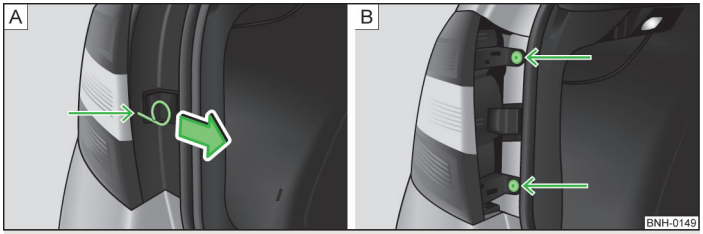

Fig. 180 **Remove cover/light**

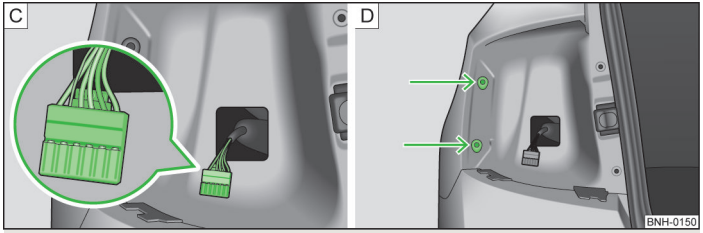

Fig. 181 **Installing the lamp connector/lamp**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

Removing

› Open the boot lid.
› Insert the clamp for removing the wheel trims » page 183, *Vehicle tool kit* into the hole at the position indicated by the arrow » Fig. 180 - A.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 180 - A.
› Use the screwdriver from the tool kit to unscrew the lamp » Fig. 180 - B.
› Grip the tail lamp and carefully remove it by jiggling it out in the opposite direction of travel.
› Carefully remove the connector from the tail lamp » Fig. 181 - C.

Installing

› Insert the connector into the lamp and lock it securely.
› Insert the lamp into the mounts in the body » Fig. 181 - D.
› Carefully press the tail lamp into the body so that the bolts 2 » Fig. 182 on page 206 on the lamp engage into the mounts in the body » !.

Ensure that the cable bundle does not become pinched between the body and the lamp.

› Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover.

The cover must engage securely.

CAUTION

- Ensure that the cable bundle does not become pinched between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted – risk of damage to the electric installation and risk of water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the cable bundle has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.
- Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing bulbs in rear light (Rapid Spaceback)

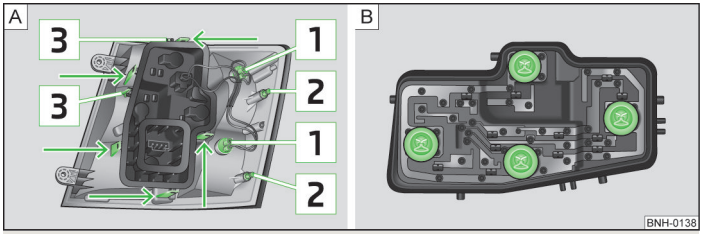

Fig. 182 **Outer part of the lamp/inner part of the lamp**

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ! on page 200.

Outer part of the lamp

› Turn the bulb holder 1 » Fig. 182 in an **anti-clockwise** direction and remove it from the lamp housing.
› Replace the bulb, reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn to the stop in a **clockwise** direction.

Inner part of the lamp

› Unlock the bulb holder using the locking latches marked with arrows » Fig. 182 - A and remove the bulb holder from the tail lamp.
› Turn the bulb holder to the stop » Fig. 182 - B in an **anti-clockwise** direction and remove it from the lamp housing.
› Replace the bulb, reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn to the stop in a **clockwise** direction.
› Insert guide mandrels 3 » Fig. 182 of the bulb holder into the lamp.

All locking mechanisms must audibly snap into place.

Technical data

Technical data

Vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle identification data

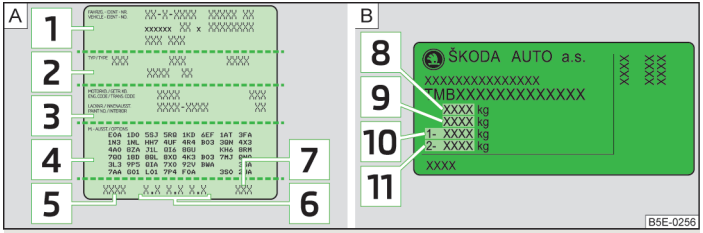

Fig. 183 **Vehicle data sticker/type plate**

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 207.

Vehicle data sticker
The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 183 - A is located underneath the floor covering in the boot.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data:

1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2 Vehicle type
3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
4 Partial vehicle description
5 Operating weight (in kg)
6 Fuel consumption (in ltr./100 km) - intra-urban/extra-urban/combined
7 CO_2 emission levels - combined (in g/km)

The indicated positions 5, 6 and 7 on the vehicle data sticker are only valid for some countries.

Type plate
The type plate » Fig. 183 - B is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the driver's side.

The type plate lists the following weights:

8 Maximum permissible gross weight
9 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
10 Maximum permissible front axle load
11 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code).

Engine number
The engine number (three-digit identifier and serial number) is stamped on the engine block.

Operating weight
The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only. This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

It is possible to calculate the approximate loading capacity from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight » !.

The payload consists of the following components:
› Passengers
› All items of luggage and other loads
› Roof load including roof rack system
› Equipment not included in the operating weight
› Trailer drawbar load when towing a trailer (max. 50 kg).

Fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE regulations and EU directives
The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards standard urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

! WARNING

Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

i Note

▪ If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.
▪ The fuel consumption and emission values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.
▪ Depending on the range of equipment, style of driving, traffic situation, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values may deviate from the indicated values.

Dimensions

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 207.

Vehicle dimensions (mm)

	Rapid	Rapid Spaceback
Length	4483	4304
Width	1706	1706
Width including exterior mirror	1940	1940
Height	1461/1488[a] (1474/1500 [a])[b]	1459/1471[a] (1472/1484 [a])[b]
Clearance	136/143[b]	134/141[b]
Wheel base	2602	2602
Track gauge front/rear	1457/1494 (1463/1500)[c]	1457/1494 (1463/1500)[c]

[a] Valid for vehicles with the Amundsen+ navigation system.
[b] Applies to vehicles with a rough road package.
[c] Applies to cars fitted with the 1.2 l/55 kW MPI and 1.2 l/63 kW TSI engines and 14" wheel rims.

Vehicle-specific details per engine type

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 207.

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

1.2 l/55 kW MPI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
55/5400	112/3750	3/1198
Driving performances	**Rapid MG5**	**Rapid Spaceback MG5**
Top speed (km/h)	175	172
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	13.9	13.8
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	750 [a]/950[b]	750 [a]/950[b]
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	560	560

[a] Slopes up to 12 %
[b] Slopes up to 8 %

1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
63/4800	160/1500-3500	4/1197
Driving performances	**Rapid MG5**	**Rapid Spaceback MG5**
Top speed (km/h)	183	180
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.8	11.7
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	900 [a]/1100[b]	900 [a]/1100[b]
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	570	570

[a] Slopes up to 12 %
[b] Slopes up to 8 %

1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
77/5000	175/1550-4100	4/1197
Performances	**Rapid MG6**	**Rapid Spaceback MG6**
Top speed (km/h)	195	193
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.3	10.2
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1100 [a]/1200[b]	1100 [a]/1200[b]
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	580	580

[a] Slopes up to 12 %
[b] Slopes up to 8 %

1.4 ltr./90 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
90/5000	200/1500-4000	4/1390
Driving performances	**Rapid DSG7**	**Rapid Spaceback DSG7**
Top speed (km/h)	206	203
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.5	9.4
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1200	1200
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	610	610

1.6 l/77 kW MPI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)		Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	
77/5600	153/3800		4/1598	
Performances	**Rapid MG5**	**Rapid WG6**	**Rapid Spaceback MG5**	**Rapid Spaceback WG6**
Top speed (km/h)	193	192	191	190
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.6	11.9	10.5	11.8
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1000 [a]/1200[b]	1000 [a]/1200[b]	1000 [a]/1200[b]	1000 [a]/1200[b]
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	570	590	570	590

[a] Slopes up to 12 %
[b] Slopes up to 8 %

1.6 l./66 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)		Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	
66/4200	230/1500-2500		4/1598	
Driving performances	**Rapid MG5**	**Rapid DSG7**	**Rapid Spaceback MG5**	**Rapid Spaceback DSG7**
Top speed (km/h)	184/186[a)]	184	182/184[a)]	182
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.0	12.2	11.9	12.1
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1200	1200	1200	1200
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	630	640	630	640

a) GreenLine

1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
77/4400	250/1500-2500	4/1598
Driving performances	**Rapid MG5**	**Rapid Spaceback MG5**
Top speed (km/h)	190	190
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.4	10.3
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	1200	1200
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	630	630

Multi-purpose vehicles (AF)

First read and observe the introductory information given on page 207.

Engine	1.2 l./55 kW MPI	1.2 l./63 kW TSI	1.2 l./77 kW TSI	1.4 l./90 kW TSI	1.6 l/77kW MPI	1.6 l./66 kW TDI CR	1.6 l./77 kW TDI CR
Maximum permissible gross weight (kg)	1595/1640[a)]	1615/1660[a)]	1635/1680[a)]	1690/1735[a)]	1615/1660[a)] (1655/1700 [a)])[b)]	1725/1770[a)] (1745/1790 [a)])[b)] 1723[c)]	1725/1770[a)]

a) Applies to vehicles with a rough road package.
b) Valid for vehicles with automatic gearbox.
c) GreenLine

Index

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

R

S

T

U

V

W

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of constant product and model development. We trust that you will understand that changes to models in terms of shape, equipment and engineering, may be introduced at any time. The information about appearance, performances, dimensions, weight, standards and functions of the vehicle is correct at the time of publication. Some equipment might only be introduced at a later date, or might only be offered in certain markets; information is provided by ŠKODA Partners. It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the data, illustrations and descriptions contained in this Owner's Manual.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA Service in your pocket

The ŠKODA Service application is designed for smartphones operating on iOS and Andriod systems, and its purpose is to help ŠKODA AUTO customers in any difficult situation they may encounter on their travels.

My dealer – choose your nearest or preferred Service Centre.

Assistance – contact the Assistance Service or your favourite dealer.

My car – complete Owner's Manual and summary list of all control lamps for quick review

Available to download from AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – Know your vehicle

The ŠKODA Manual application aims on users of tablet PCs who are interested in ŠKODA vehicles or already own one. The application contains full featured digital version of the Owner's Manual for all current ŠKODA models.

› Navigation through the **list of content**
› Classical **reading page by page**
› **Full text search** throughout the whole manual
› **Bookmarks** for fast access to favourite chapters

Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

www.skoda-auto.com

You also can do something for the environment!

The fuel consumption of your ŠKODA and the related pollutant emissions are determined crucially on how you drive.

The noise and the wear of the vehicle depend on the way how you deal with your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual shows you how to use your ŠKODA vehicle with utmost care for the environment while driving economically at the same time.

Also please pay attention to those parts in the Owner's Manual that are marked ♻ below.

Work with us – for the sake of the environment.

Návod k obsluze
Rapid anglicky 11.2013
S56.5610.04.20
5JA 012 720 AD